

OXFORD

oxford
exam
support



with Teacher's Resource Disk

Third Edition **Solutions**

Pre-Intermediate

Teacher's Book
ir language

Christina de la Mare

Katherine Stannett Jeremy Bowell

Tim Falla Paul A Davies

مرجع زبان ایرانیان

**Contents**

| | |
|---|----|
| Introduction to <i>Solutions Third Edition</i> | 3 |
| Unit 1 Introduction | 4 |
| Unit 1 Feelings | 6 |
| Unit 2 Adventure | 11 |
| Unit 3 On screen | 16 |
| Unit 4 Our planet | 21 |
| Unit 5 Ambition | 26 |
| Unit 6 Tourism | 31 |
| Unit 7 Money | 36 |
| Unit 8 Crime | 41 |
| Unit 9 Science | 46 |
| Culture Bank | 51 |
| Workbook answer keys and transcripts | 56 |

Third Edition **Solutions**

Pre-Intermediate**Essentials Teacher's Book**

این مجموعه با لوگوی مرجع زبان ایرانیان
به صورت نشر بر خط و حامل به ثبت رسیده است.
کپی بر داری از آن خلاف شرع، قانون و اخلاق است و شامل پیگیرد خواهد شد.

Introduction to *Solutions Third Edition*

A note from the authors

Welcome to *Solutions Third Edition*. Teachers' responses to *Solutions* and *Solutions Second Edition* have been overwhelmingly positive. *Solutions Third Edition* has evolved, based on teacher feedback, whilst retaining the key features that teachers value in the *Solutions* series:

- engaging topics and texts
- a strong focus on exam topics and tasks
- a clear structure, with easy-to-follow lessons that always have an achievable outcome
- a familiar teaching and learning approach with plenty of extra practice material
- a guided and supported approach to speaking and writing

In the course of extensive research carried out for the new edition, we spoke to scores of teachers and asked them how we could improve the course.

In response to their requests, we have:

- provided 100% new content
- included a Listening lesson in every unit which will develop your students' listening skills
- included a Word Skills lesson in every unit which explores the grammar of key vocabulary and includes dictionary-based exercises
- addressed mixed ability, with extra support for all levels and suggested extension activities in the Teacher's Guide
- increased the amount of language recycling and included a *Recycle!* activity to consolidate grammar students have studied earlier in the course
- provided added flexibility with a bank of Culture lessons with supporting DVD documentary clips at the back of the Student's Book and extra activities on the Classroom Presentation Tool

Solutions Third Edition has benefited from collaboration with teachers with extensive experience of teaching and preparing students for exams. We would like to thank Christina de la Mare for sharing her expertise in writing the procedural notes in the Teacher's Guide.

We are confident that the result is a forward-thinking and modern course that will prepare your students for the future and provide you with all the support that you need. We hope that you and your students enjoy using it!

Tim Falla and Paul A Davies

The components of the course

- Student's Book
- Workbook with audio available online
- Student's Book and Workbook e-Books
- Teacher's Pack
 - Essentials Teacher's Book: answer keys and audio scripts for both the Student's Book and the Workbook
 - Teacher's Resource Disk: full teaching notes, photocopiable worksheets, DVD worksheets, Twenty-first century skills projects, Course Test audio
 - Workbook Audio
- Class Audio CDs
- Course Tests
- Course DVD
- Classroom Presentation Tool
- Student's and Teacher's Websites (www.oup.com/elt/teacher/solutions)

Solutions Third Edition – new features

New for the Student's Book

- New *Listening* lesson – with a focus on sub-skills to develop students' listening skills. Lessons include strategies, exam-like practice and speaking activities.
- New *Word Skills* lesson – students learn the grammar of key vocabulary in context, including word building and phrasal verbs. Students also develop their dictionary skills.
- New *Culture Bank* – nine Culture lessons linked to the topic and language of the main units. These ready-to-use lessons can be used at any point in the course, giving teachers the flexibility to choose when to use them.

New for the Workbook

- More listening practice.
- Five *Exam Skills Trainer* sections providing further practice of typical exam tasks.
- Nine *Unit Reviews* to encourage students to reflect on their progress.
- Five *Cumulative Reviews* for Units 1–1, 1–3, 1–5, 1–7 and 1–9.

New for the Classroom Presentation Tool

- Optional lesson openers – additional lead-in activities to motivate students and recycle language.
- Optional lesson closers – quiz-style round-up activities to consolidate what students have learned in the lesson.
- Optional task support – for example, useful language or extra ideas to help students complete classroom tasks.



Introduction



Map of resources

IA Vocabulary

Student's Book, page 4; Workbook, page 4

IB Grammar

Student's Book, page 5; Workbook, page 5

IC Vocabulary

Student's Book, page 6; Workbook, page 6

Photocopiable: Vocabulary Review

ID Grammar

Student's Book, page 7; Workbook, page 7

Photocopiable: Grammar Review

Classroom Presentation Tool Unit I

End of unit

Short Tests: Unit I

IA Vocabulary

Likes and dislikes

Exercise 1 page 4

(Possible answers) The people are in a canteen. They are having lunch.

Exercise 2 1.02 page 4

The boy who is standing is Ryan. The two girls sitting at the table are Izzy and Becky.

Transcript

See Student's Book, page 4.

Exercise 3 page 4

1 F 2 T 3 T 4 T 5 F 6 F

Exercise 4 page 4

Sport and hobbies skateboarding, ice skating, bowling

School subjects maths, history, PE

Exercise 5 page 4

Subjects chemistry, geography, music

Hobbies gymnastics, chess, dance / dancing

Students' own answers

For further practice of sports and hobbies:

Vocabulary Builder IA page 117

- 1 1 basketball 2 chess 3 ice hockey
 4 video games 5 ice skating 6 listening to music
 7 cycling 8 drama

2 (Possible answers)

- a bowling, cycling, dancing, drawing, gymnastics, ice skating, listening to music, skateboarding, swimming, video games, watching films
- b board games, chess, drawing, listening to music, video games, watching films
- c basketball, bowling, football, ice hockey, volleyball

Exercise 6 page 4

A I love ...; I'm really keen on ...; ... is great.

B I don't mind ...; I (quite) like ...; ... isn't bad.

C I can't stand ...; I hate ...; ... is terrible.

Phrases in the dialogue I love ...; I hate ...;

I don't mind ...; I like ...; I'm not very keen on ...

IB Grammar

Contrast: present simple and present continuous

Exercise 1 page 5

(Possible answers) The girl on the left is playing the guitar and laughing. The other people are listening to her. Everyone is sitting on the grass and smiling. They are enjoying themselves. The boys are wearing jeans and T-shirts.

Exercise 2 page 5

Because he loves volleyball.

Exercise 3 page 5

2 present continuous 3 present continuous

4 present simple 5 present simple 6 present continuous

Exercise 4 page 5

a She has guitar lessons every week.

b What are you doing? At the moment, we're listening to Sue. She's playing the guitar. So are you coming? We're packing boxes today.

c She's getting better. We're moving house next weekend.

d I'm in the park with some friends. She's OK. That's a shame. A game of volleyball doesn't take long.

e Do you want to join us? I don't know. I need to help my parents. I love volleyball!

f We're moving house next weekend. We're playing volleyball later.

Exercise 5 page 5

(Possible answers)

1 a I have arranged to do my homework after school today.

b I always do my homework after school.

2 a Joe is learning to drive at the moment.

b This is a fact.

3 a This is a fact.

b He is playing the guitar at this moment.

4 a We haven't made a plan to go on holiday this August. We are doing something else then.

b We never go on holiday in August.

For further practice of present simple and continuous contrast: Grammar Builder IB page 122

- 1 1 lives 2 visits 3 watches 4 studies 5 plays
6 goes 7 misses 8 has
- 2 2 My cat doesn't like cheese.
3 Jack and Ellie don't live near the city centre.
4 Maya doesn't go bowling every weekend.
5 My next door neighbours don't work in London.
6 Amelia doesn't wear sports clothes at home.
- 3 2 He isn't reading. He's sleeping. 3 They aren't skateboarding. They're reading. 4 It isn't drinking water. It's playing. 5 He isn't washing. He's cooking.
6 They aren't playing volleyball. They're chatting.
- 4 1 sleep 2 walks 3 don't belong
4 it's snowing 5 I'm meeting 6 are you wearing
7 doesn't understand 8 I'm having
- 5 1 are you doing 2 am looking 3 am going
4 don't ... buy 5 want 6 Does she like
7 prefers 8 is reading

Exercise 6 1.03 page 5

- 2 'm waiting 3 Are you going 4 are playing
5 play 6 is he doing 7 don't know 8 isn't answering
9 'm not buying 10 'm ... looking 11 Do you like
12 Do you want 13 'm not wearing
14 Are you wearing 15 don't need

Transcript

Toby Hi!

Leia Hi, Toby. What are you doing?

T I'm at the sports centre. I'm waiting for Tom.

L Are you going swimming?

T No, we're playing table tennis. We play every Saturday morning. But he's really late!

L What's he doing?

T I don't know. He isn't answering his phone. Anyway, where are you?

L I'm at the shopping centre, but I'm not buying anything today. I'm just looking.

T Do you like table tennis? Do you want to play?

L Sure! But I'm not wearing sports clothes.

T Are you wearing trainers?

L Yes, I am – with jeans and a T-shirt.

T That's fine. You don't need sports clothes. See you soon!

IC Vocabulary

Describing people

Exercise 1 page 6

- A Katniss Everdeen, played by Jennifer Lawrence, is in the Hunger Games films.
- B Javert, played by Russell Crowe, is in *Les Misérables*.
- C Edward Cullen, played by Robert Pattinson, is in the Twilight Saga films.
- D James Bond, played by Daniel Craig, is in the James Bond films.
- E Black Widow, played by Scarlett Johansson, is in the Avengers films.
- F Galadriel, played by Cate Blanchett, is in the Hobbit and the Lord of the Rings films.

Exercise 2 page 6

- 1 Katniss Everdeen, b 2 Black Widow, a
3 Edward Cullen, d 4 Javert, c

Exercise 3 page 6

Length long, medium-length Style straight, wavy
Colour black, brown, fair, red

Exercise 4 page 6

Top half coat, T-shirt, hat

Bottom half jeans

Students' own answers

For further practice of clothes:

Vocabulary Builder IC page 117

- 3 A a dress, a coat, a hat and gloves.
B a shirt, a tie, a jacket and trousers.
C a sweater / T-shirt, a cardigan, a skirt, a scarf and boots.
D a T-shirt, a hoodie, shorts and trainers.

Exercise 5 page 6

(Possible answers) Galadriel has got very long wavy fair hair. She's wearing a white dress / blouse / shirt. James Bond has got short straight fair / brown hair. He's wearing a light blue shirt, a dark blue jacket and trousers and a dark blue tie.

ID Grammar

Articles

Exercise 1 page 7

(Possible answer) There is a robot dog in the classroom. The robot on the right is a teacher.

Exercise 3 page 7

- 1 a / an 2 the 3 the 4 a / an 5 the 6 -

Exercise 4 page 7

- a a classroom; a primary school
b The classroom; the teacher; The robot; the students
c the robots, the girl on the right
d a teacher; a real teacher; an English teacher
e at university

Exercise 5 page 7

- 2 the 3 the 4 a 5 a 6 an 7 the 8 a 9 a

Exercise 6 page 7

- 1 Dogs; cats 2 The weather 3 Football; volleyball

For further practice of articles:

Grammar Builder ID page 122

- 6 1 a, a, the 2 the 3 the 4 a, a, the 5 -, the
6 a, a 7 a, -, - 8 the, -, -
7 1 - 2 the 3 - 4 - 5 the 6 - 7 - 8 the

Exercise 7 page 7

a is b are c is; are

There are some students on the floor.

Is there a teacher? Yes, there is.

Map of resources

1A Vocabulary

Student's Book, pages 8–9; Workbook, page 8
Photocopiable: 1A (How do you feel?)

1B Grammar

Student's Book, page 10; Workbook, page 9
Photocopiable: 1B (Past simple affirmative)

1C Listening

Student's Book, page 11; Workbook, page 10

1D Grammar

Student's Book, page 12; Workbook, page 11
Photocopiable: 1D (Past simple negative and interrogative)

1E Word Skills

Student's Book, page 13; Workbook, page 12

1F Reading

Student's Book, pages 14–15; Workbook, page 13

1G Speaking

Student's Book, page 16; Workbook, page 14
Photocopiable: Functional Language Practice (Giving advice)

1H Writing

Student's Book, page 17; Workbook, page 15

Culture 1

Student's Book, page 108
DVD and DVD worksheet: Unit 1

Classroom Presentation Tool Unit 1

End of unit

Unit Review: Workbook, pages 16–17
Photocopiable: Grammar Review
Exam Skills Trainer 1: Workbook, pages 18–19
Cumulative Review I–1: Workbook, pages 108–109
Progress Test and Short Tests: Unit 1

1A Vocabulary

How do you feel?

Exercise 1 page 8
(Possible answers)

- 1 **A** worried **B** happy, excited **C** angry **D** bored
2 **Photo A:** They are watching a football match and their team is losing.
Photo B: The girls' exam results are very good.
Photo C: The plane was late / The man can't find his bags.
Photo D: The girl's schoolwork is difficult and boring.

Exercise 2 1.04 page 8
(Possible answers)

- A** anxious / upset **B** delighted / excited / proud
C cross **D** bored

Transcript
See Student's Book page 8.

Exercise 3 page 8

- A** delighted, excited, proud, relieved
B anxious, ashamed, bored, confused, cross, disappointed, embarrassed, envious, frightened, shocked, suspicious, upset

Exercise 4 page 9
See Student's Book, page 9.

Exercise 5 page 9

- 2 bored 3 excited / relieved 4 delighted / relieved
5 cross / upset 6 embarrassed

Exercise 6 1.05 page 9

- 1 excited 2 disappointed 3 confused
4 embarrassed 5 anxious

Transcript

- 1 Guess what? You know there's a big charity concert at Wembley Stadium next week? Well, I've got a ticket! ... I know! It's great, isn't it? ... Who's playing? Loads of bands. ... Well, for a start, the Black Eyed Peas. ... I know! And Lady Gaga. And Katy Perry. ... I know, amazing! I can't wait!
- 2 Hi. What are you up to? ... Oh, really? Sounds good. ... Me? I'm baking! ... You know it's Matt's birthday on Saturday? ... Yes, it's a birthday cake. ... Chocolate and Brazil nut. ... He doesn't eat nuts? Oh, I didn't know that. Oh dear. That's bad news! But the nuts are big; he can leave them. ... What? ... He doesn't like chocolate? Are you sure? Oh. That's really bad news.
- 3 Hello, Nicky? Yes, I'm at the bus stop. ... Sorry! ... But listen ... No, but listen ... Just listen a moment! ... I know, but I got here nearly an hour ago. There aren't any buses! ... I don't know why. It's really strange. ... Yes, they're usually every ten minutes. ... No, I really don't understand. Very strange ...
- 4 Hi, Anna! I got a text from your brother about your exam. Con-grat-u-LA-tions! Brilliant news! ... What? ... Sorry? Oh, you failed? Really? ... Hang on, let me read it again. ... Oh yes. I'm so sorry, I didn't read it properly. ... Yes, yes ... I'm sure you're feeling really bad. ... Actually, so am I, now. Red face! Silly me.
- 5 Hello, Dad? ... Yes, I know it's late. ... Yes. I am in bed. But I can hear voices outside. ... In the garden, I think. ... They're men's voices. ... Where are you? Are you coming home soon? ... Yes, Mum's here, but I think she's asleep. ... No, they're still there. I don't like it ... Yes, they could be next door, I suppose. I don't know. Are you coming home soon?

Exercise 7 1.05 page 9

a 4, doesn't know b 3, doesn't understand c 5, is lying
d 1, has e 2, is making

Transcript

See exercise 6.

Exercise 9 page 9

a little bit, a bit, rather, very, extremely

1B Grammar**Past simple (affirmative)****Exercise 2** page 10

(Possible answer) People are not always happy when they win the lottery. People can make bad decisions or have terrible arguments with family and friends.

Exercise 3 page 10

a returned, looked
b studied, compared, stopped
c bought, chose, won, felt, gave, found, spent, had
d were, was

For further practice of the past simple affirmative:**Grammar Builder 1B** page 124

- 1 1 looked 2 studied 3 stopped 4 died
5 moved 6 compared 7 agreed 8 enjoyed
9 realised 10 dropped 11 felt 12 left 13 spent
14 had 15 gave 16 won 17 began 18 went
19 got 20 said
- 2 1 was 2 was 3 were 4 were 5 was 6 was
7 were 8 was
- 3 1 stopped 2 worked 3 tried 4 planned
5 seemed 6 chatted 7 married 8 moved
- 4 1 saw 2 chatted 3 had 4 enjoyed 5 was
6 left 7 stayed 8 felt 9 were 10 went

Exercise 4 page 10

1 spent 2 dropped; found 3 went; studied
4 married; were 5 left; moved

Exercise 5 1.06 page 10

1 were 2 won 3 gave 4 spent 5 got 6 was
7 decided 8 had 9 began 10 said

Transcript

In 2002, nineteen-year-old British refuse collector Michael Carroll and his family were delighted when he won £9.7 million in the lottery. He gave millions of pounds to charity and to friends and relatives. He also spent thousands on loud, all-night parties, and over the next few years, he got into trouble with the police several times. His wife Sandra was cross and upset and decided to leave. Soon, he had no money left, and in 2010, he began work as a refuse collector again. 'I'm just glad it's over,' he said.

Exercise 7 page 10

2 was embarrassed; dropped
3 was delighted; won
4 felt (a bit) suspicious; said
5 were (very) disappointed; stopped; left
6 got (a bit) bored; talked
7 were (extremely) relieved; found

1C Listening**Problems, problems!****Exercise 1** page 11

(Possible answer) One girl is upset. The other girl is talking to her to make her feel better.

Exercise 3 1.07 page 11

b

Transcript

Tom Hi, Zak. Do you fancy going into town?
Zak I'm sorry, Tom, I can't. I need to do some revision.
T Revision? For what?
Z The exams next month.
T But they're six weeks away!
Z I know. That's only two weeks for each subject. Look, I'm making a plan. This week, it's maths. Next week ...
T OK, OK. Calm down!
Z I can't! I always do badly in exams. I want these ones to go well. I need to study ... See you later.
T Hang on. Why do you do badly in exams? You always study a lot.
Z I don't know. I panic, I suppose.
T Exactly! You panic. You need to stay calm. Take a break from your revision. Come with me into town. Then you can get back to your revision tomorrow.
Z Well, I don't know ... Maybe you're right, Tom.
T Great! Come on, then.
Z But actually ... I really want to finish this revision plan. Let's go out tomorrow.
T I'm busy tomorrow.
Z Well, maybe at the weekend.
T I really think you should stop working for a bit.
Z I'm sorry. Look, let's speak soon.
T OK. It's your decision.

Exercise 5 1.08 page 11

A 2 B 4 C 1 D 5

Transcript

A Madison Hi, Louis. Are you going to watch the match?
Louis Yes, I am. But I've also got this history project to finish!
M Oh, the history project. Yes, I finished mine this morning.
L Well done. I'm having a few problems with mine. I can't think what to write. And the match starts in twenty minutes!
M I know! I can record the match. Then we can watch it together when you finish your project.
L Hmm. I'm not sure. I think I need to take a break. We can watch the football together here.

M But you have to do the project some time. Why don't we look at it together now? We can make a plan for it – then you can finish it fairly quickly.

L That's not a bad idea ... but to be honest, I'm a bit bored with it. Come on, let's go in the living room and turn the TV on.

M Are you sure? I always like to finish my school work before I relax ...

L I know. But we're different! Come on ...

M Well, OK. It's your project ...

B Matt Hi, Emma. Can I ask your advice about something?

Emma Sure, Matt. What is it?

M You know my friend Toby?

E Yes.

M Well, he's really angry with me.

E Oh dear. Why's that?

M Well, I wrote something on his Facebook page ... and he didn't like it.

E Oh no! What did you write?

M I'm not telling you. It was just a silly joke.

E And he didn't find it funny.

M Exactly. In fact, he really took offence. I said sorry and deleted the comment – but he's still angry. What should I do? I feel so bad about it!

E Why don't you give him a call and chat about it?

M I tried that. He didn't answer.

E Well, why don't you text him? You have to keep trying!

M I know. You're right. I can't give up. Thanks for your advice.

C Zoe Hi, Ryan. You don't look very happy. Is something wrong?

Ryan Well, yes, it is, actually. Can I tell you about it?

Z Sure, go ahead.

R Well, I saw Brandon yesterday, and he told me about this girl – Amy, she's called.

Z Go on.

R Well, he really likes her. He wants to ask her out. He talked about her for ages.

Z So, what's the problem?

R I asked her out last week, and she said yes!

Z Did you say that to Brandon?

R No, I didn't. I couldn't ... I don't know ... I'm embarrassed. He really likes her ... I don't want him to get cross with me.

Z But you can't keep it a secret!

R I know. What can I do?

Z You have to tell the truth!

R Hmm. But it's difficult ...

Z Do you want me to have a word with him?

R Yes. Yes, please. Can you do that?

Z OK. I suppose so.

D Alex Hi, Marcus.

Marcus Hi, Alex. Can I ask your advice about something?

A Of course you can.

M Well, it's Jack's birthday tomorrow and he's going out for dinner at a pizza restaurant. About ten of his friends are going.

A OK. So what's the problem?

M I can't go. I haven't got any money.

A Oh. Does Jack know that?

M No, he doesn't. When he invited me, I just said, 'Thanks! It sounds great!'

A So he thinks you're going.

M Yes! Well, I'm not sure. Maybe.

A Well, you need to make it clear.

M I know, but it's embarrassing. All my other friends can afford it.

A Do you want some money? I can lend you £10.

M Thanks, Alex, but I don't like borrowing money from friends. And anyway, £10 isn't enough.

A Why don't you ask your mum and dad for some money?

M I asked them, but they said no.

A Well, you need to speak to Jack again. Make an excuse. Tell him you've got a family party the same evening.

M What, tell a lie?

A It's only a little lie. That's my advice, anyway.

Exercise 6 1.09 page 11

3 take 4 give 5 tell 6 have 7 make 8 tell

Transcript

See exercise 5.

1D Grammar

Past simple (negative and interrogative)

Exercise 2 1.10 page 12

The film wasn't great. She couldn't see the screen very well because the man in front of her was really tall and he didn't stop talking to his girlfriend. She also lost her mobile.

Transcript

See Student's Book, page 12.

Exercise 3 page 12

1 did not (didn't) 2 did

3 was / were 4 could / couldn't

For further practice of the past simple (negative and interrogative): Grammar Builder 1D page 124

5 1 didn't enjoy 2 couldn't 3 didn't win
4 wasn't 5 didn't feel 6 didn't study
7 didn't leave 8 didn't spend

6 1 weren't 2 were you 3 couldn't 4 were
5 Was it 6 was 7 was 8 Were there 9 wasn't
10 was 11 couldn't

Exercise 4 page 12

2 I couldn't walk when I was one year old.
3 I didn't walk home from school yesterday.
4 My teacher didn't give us lots of homework last weekend.
5 It wasn't hot and sunny yesterday.
6 I didn't get up before seven o'clock this morning.

Exercise 5 1.11 page 12

1 didn't leave 2 lent 3 didn't give 4 left
5 did you do 6 Did you ring 7 couldn't 8 wasn't
9 phoned 10 Did anyone answer 11 did she have
12 Was she 13 picked

Transcript

Sam You didn't leave your mobile at the cinema. You lent it to me, remember? I didn't give it back to you.

Emma Yes, of course! Can you bring it to school tomorrow?

S I'm really sorry but ... I left it on the bus yesterday evening.

E Oh no! What did you do? Did you ring the bus company?

S Yes, I did but they couldn't find it. It wasn't on the bus.

Don't worry – I phoned your number ...

E Did anyone answer?

S Yes! Lucy, from our class.

E Why did she have my phone? Was she on the bus with you?

S Yes, she picked it up by mistake. She's bringing it to school tomorrow!

Exercise 6 page 12

Who, What

Who did you go with?

Exercise 7 page 12

2 Did you go; did you go

3 Did you see; did you see

4 Did you do; did you do it

5 Did you play; games did you play

6 Did you do; sport did you do

For further practice of question words:

Grammar Builder 1D page 124

7 1 Where 2 What 3 When 4 How

5 How often 6 Who

9 2 did she dance with 3 are you looking for

4 did they walk (to) 5 is he worried about

1E Word Skills

Adjective endings

Exercise 1 page 13

(Possible answer) A girl sent a message in a bottle.

Exercise 2 page 13

A man replied to the message. He replied in 2013 from the Netherlands.

Exercise 4 page 13

1 -ed 2 -ing

Exercise 5 page 13

-ed bored, amazed, surprised, delighted

-ing tiring, interesting, moving, astonishing, exciting

The adjective *delighted* doesn't have an -ing equivalent.

Exercise 6 page 13

annoy annoyed, annoying

worry worried, worrying

disgust disgusted, disgusting

exhaust exhausted, exhausting

relieve relieved (no -ing adjective)

satisfy satisfied, satisfying

surprise surprised, surprising

Exercise 7 page 13

1 boring 2 exciting 3 frightened 4 shocked

5 annoying 6 worried

Exercise 8 page 13

1 a confusing b confused

2 a embarrassed b embarrassing

3 a tiring b tired

4 a interested b interesting

5 a disgusting b disgusted

1F Reading

Painless

Exercise 3 page 14

1 B 2 E 3 A 4 - 5 C 6 - 7 D

Exercise 5 page 14

2 Why 3 How many 4 Who 5 When 6 What

2 He was shocked because there was a serious cut, but the baby wasn't upset and didn't cry.

3 About a hundred people are born with this condition in the USA each year.

4 A teacher watched her.

5 It appeared when Ashlyn was five.

6 It is a genetic disorder. Pain signals do not reach the brain.

Exercise 6 page 14

1 injure 2 trip 3 break 4 blood 5 a bruise

6 a burn 7 an injury

Exercise 7 page 14

b break (irregular) c burn (regular) d cut (irregular)

e fall over (irregular) f hurt (irregular)

g injure (regular) h sprain (regular)

1G Speaking

Narrating events

Exercise 2 page 16

1 learned / learnt 2 loved 3 wasn't 4 got

5 spent 6 didn't leave 7 watched

Exercise 3 1.13 page 16

The photo goes with the first half of the dialogue because it shows Laurie bodyboarding.

Transcript

Kirstie Hi, Laurie. How are you? Tell me about your summer holiday!

Laurie Well, for the first three weeks, I was at a summer camp in Cornwall.

K Really? That sounds like fun!

L Yes, it was. I learned a new sport – bodyboarding.

K Wow! That sounds great!

L Yes, I loved it. It was really exciting – and a bit frightening too!

K I bet! What else did you get up to over the summer?

L Well, the second half of the holiday wasn't so good. I got a stomach bug and spent nearly a week on the sofa.

K Oh dear! How awful!

L I didn't leave the house for days. I just watched DVDs. I was so bored!

Exercise 4 1.14 page 16

a 2, worried **b** 1, surprised **c** – **d** 3, suspicious
e 4, envious

Transcript

- 1 I spent the last two weeks of the summer holiday with my cousins in Newcastle. While I was there, I took part in the Great North Run – a half marathon. I'm not a keen runner, but two of my cousins are, so I ran with them. Twenty-one kilometres! The amazing thing is, I actually didn't feel exhausted at the end. I couldn't understand it. OK, so my time wasn't very good. But I didn't really care about that. I was just amazed I finished it!
- 2 I was in Cornwall for two weeks with my family. We stayed in a cottage near the sea. The weather was great – hot and sunny every day. In fact, I got burned quite badly on my shoulders. My brother really laughed at me, but I didn't think it was amusing at all. In fact, I was quite anxious about it. After all, sunburn can cause serious problems with your skin when you're older. In fact, I went to see my doctor about it when I got back. She said I had to be more careful next time.
- 3 In August, there was a dance competition in the sports centre. It was ballroom dancing, like on that TV show Strictly Come Dancing. Well, I go to dance class every week and I'm not bad – so I entered the competition. I danced really well, I think. But I didn't win. Later, I found out some information about the winners. They're brother and sister, and guess where their dad works ... At the sports centre! I don't think it was a fair competition. I mean, I saw them and they weren't very good.
- 4 At the beginning of the summer, I spent a week on the south coast of England with my dad. I went to visit my friend Macey, who moved there last year. She's got an amazing house! It's got about seven bedrooms and a cinema room. And the garden is enormous. There's a swimming pool and a tennis court. I wish I lived in a place like that, I really do. She's so lucky!

Exercise 5 1.14 page 16

Yes.

Transcript

See exercise 4.

Exercise 6 page 16

Wow! Oh dear! How awful!

For further practice of *get*: Vocabulary Builder 1G page 117

- 1 **1** got, d 2 get, c 3 gets, e 4 got, b
5 is getting, a

1H Writing

A description of an event

Exercise 3 page 17

- A** amused, guilty **B** angry, frightened
C anxious, pleased **D** angry, pleased

Exercise 4 page 17

- a** find out **b** get over **c** look carefully at **d** own up

For further practice of phrasal verbs and register: Vocabulary Builder 1H page 117

- 3 **1** makes up 2 got away 3 ran after
4 look up to 5 carry on 6 put up with
7 give back 8 talk about 9 came back

Map of resources**2A Vocabulary**

Student's Book, pages 18–19; Workbook, page 20

Photocopiable: 2A (Landscapes)

2B Grammar

Student's Book, page 20; Workbook, page 21

Photocopiable: 2B (Past continuous)

2C Listening

Student's Book, page 21; Workbook, page 22

2D Grammar

Student's Book, page 22; Workbook, page 23

Photocopiable: 2D (Contrast: past simple and past continuous)

2E Word Skills

Student's Book, page 23; Workbook, page 24

2F Reading

Student's Book, pages 24–25; Workbook, page 25

2G Speaking

Student's Book, page 26; Workbook, page 26

2H Writing

Student's Book, page 27; Workbook, page 27

Culture 2

Student's Book, page 109

DVD and DVD worksheet: Unit 2

Classroom Presentation Tool Unit 2**End of unit**

Unit Review: Workbook, pages 28–29

Photocopiable: Grammar Review

Photocopiable: Vocabulary Review

Exam Skills Trainer 1: Student's Book, pages 28–29

Progress Test and Short Tests: Unit 2

- C** This man is climbing up a cliff. You can see the ocean and the rocks below.
- D** This diver is inside an underwater cave in the ocean. He's looking between the rocks.
- E** This person is in a small boat – it's a kayak. The kayak is on a lake, near the shore. In the background, there are mountains.

Exercise 3 page 18

deep – shallow; low – tall; narrow – wide

Exercise 4 page 18

(Possible answers)

deep cave / ocean / lake / river / valley

icy lake / river / stream

low hill / waterfall

narrow cave / lake / river / stream / valley

rocky desert / mountain / shore / valley

shallow cave / ocean / river / stream

steep cliff / hill / mountain / valley

tall cliff / waterfall

wide cave / lake / river / shore / stream / valley

Exercise 5 1.16 page 19

1 E 2 D 3 – 4 A

Transcript

- 1 Bored with the beach? Hungry for adventure? Why not spend seven days in a remote and beautiful landscape in Alaska? Kayak across icy lakes and shallow rivers. See eagles, bears and other fascinating wildlife. Or just enjoy the amazing scenery on your journey through tall mountains and deep valleys. The view of the mountains as you kayak across the lake is unforgettable.
- 2 For experienced divers only, this holiday offers an amazing chance to explore the rocky caves along the coast of Mexico. You can only reach some of these areas by boat – a boat that will be your home for five days. After three days near the caves, the boat leaves the steep cliffs and heads for the ocean for two days – a chance to see some of Mexico's amazing marine wildlife.
- 3 On this seven-day walking holiday in the Philippines, you'll see mountains and valleys, lakes and forests. But the highlight of the week is the chance to stand beside Lake Pinatubo, a lake inside a volcano. Thirty years ago, this lake didn't exist at all. But when Mount Pinatubo erupted in 1991, the top of the volcano blew off. A shallow lake formed, which soon became deep because of all the rain. Take a break from the tropical heat by enjoying a swim in this beautiful and exotic natural feature!
- 4 Join Forest Trekkers on a Canadian adventure you'll never forget. We offer a two-week journey through the spectacular scenery of Canada. See the parts of the country that most tourists never reach: kayak down narrow rivers under the trees or walk across narrow, wooden bridges. Find dark caves behind tall waterfalls. We promise you'll fall in love with this exciting and magical landscape, with its tall trees, clean waters and clear blue skies.

2A Vocabulary**Landscapes****Exercise 2** 1.15 page 18**A** forest, river, rocks, waterfall**B** hill, rocks, valley**C** cliff, ocean, rocks**D** cave, ocean, rocks**E** lake, mountain, shore**Transcript**

- A** There are two people on a bridge near a forest. There's a waterfall and some rocks below them. The bridge goes across a river.
- B** There is a man standing on some rocks at the top of a hill. He's looking out over a valley.

Exercise 6 1.16 page 19

- 2 through, tall, valleys
- 3 rocky, along
- 4 near, cliffs
- 5 beside, inside, volcano
- 6 shallow, deep
- 7 down, under
- 8 caves, behind, waterfalls

Transcript

See exercise 5.

Exercise 7 page 19

- 1 There's, D 2 There's, there are, B 3 There are, A
- 4 There's, E

2B Grammar

Past continuous

Exercise 1 page 20

(Possible answer) Because the man is standing very still, wearing summer clothes and staring at the narrator.

Exercise 2 page 20

were hurrying, were sitting, was talking, wasn't looking, was singing, (was) playing, were shouting, (were) waving, (were) carrying, (were) running, was standing, was he wearing, was looking

For further practice of the past continuous:

Grammar Builder 2B page 126

- 1 1 was texting 2 were ... laughing
3 weren't paying, was speaking
4 was walking, eating
5 was watching, was reading 6 was ... doing
- 2 1 was shining 2 were singing 3 were getting
4 was putting 5 were making 6 was talking
- 3 1 were you doing 2 was watching
3 were ... watching 4 wasn't paying
5 was your husband doing 6 was making
7 was going

Exercise 3 page 20

- 1 was shining 2 was rising 3 were carrying
- 4 was lying 5 wasn't sleeping 6 were sitting
- 7 sharing 8 were they listening

2C Listening

Adrenaline junkies

Exercise 1 page 21

People athletic, brave, impressive, strong, terrifying
Extreme sports risky, spectacular, terrifying, thrilling
Landscapes impressive, remote, spectacular

Exercise 3 1.17 page 21

- 2 over 30 3 brave 4 unfit 5 spectacular 6 hated

Transcript

Fred I like BASE jumping because it allows me to get away from the city, to remote places where you hardly see anyone.

Sally BASE jumping is really a sport for young people. There aren't many BASE jumpers who are over 30.

Chris I love the outdoors, but I'm not particularly brave, so I haven't considered BASE jumping as a hobby.

Celina BASE jumping certainly isn't a sport to try if you are unfit.

Shelley BASE jumping is a great sport and you get to do it in such spectacular surroundings.

Martin My friend asked me to go BASE jumping with him, and I hated it.

Exercise 5 1.18 page 21

- 1 T 2 T 3 F 4 F 5 F 6 T

Transcript

Interviewer Good afternoon, and welcome to the programme. Today, I'm talking to BASE jumper Tanya Marks. Tanya, thanks for joining us.

Tanya My pleasure.

I Now, Tanya, my first question to you is basically ... why? Why choose a sport with so many dangers? Why not something nice and safe, like table tennis?

T Well, I can answer that in one word: adrenaline. Extreme sports aren't safe! That's precisely why I enjoy them so much. I'm the kind of person who loves to feel that thrill of risk and adventure.

I Do you do any others?

T Well, I like skydiving – and hang-gliding too. But BASE jumping is my new sport – and my obsession! I'm totally addicted.

I How did you first get into it?

T It was one of my skydiving friends who suggested it. He had the equipment and invited me to join him. My first jump was terrifying – but I loved it!

I What's your favourite place for BASE jumping?

T Well, it keeps changing because I'm always looking for somewhere new. But at the moment, I love the cliffs in Tonsai, in Thailand. Though it isn't an ideal place to do it, as there are no hospitals nearby!

I So, is danger always in your mind when you're jumping?

T Oh yes. That's not just me, that's all BASE jumpers. We know the dangers.

I Do you think that's why there aren't many women who do BASE jumping? Do the risks put them off?

T I'm not sure ... I don't really agree. More women are joining the sport every year.

I Who are the big names?

T Well, I guess Roberta Mancino is the new star of BASE jumping. She also does skydiving and wingsuit-flying. The media love her because of the way she looks, but she's also brilliant at her sports. She's a great role model and, hopefully, she'll encourage more girls to take up extreme sports.

I Tanya Marks, thank you.

Exercise 6 1.18 page 21

- 1 likes enjoys dangerous are not safe; risk
- 2 told suggested
- 3 didn't enjoy no synonym
- 4 venue place
- 5 dangers risks
- 6 great sportswoman new star; great role-model

Transcript

See exercise 5.

2D Grammar

Contrast: past simple and past continuous

Exercise 1 page 22

(Possible answer) He is on the shore at the start. He is in the sea at the end.

Exercise 2 page 22

1 b 2 b 3 a 4 a 5 c 6 a

Exercise 3 page 22

- | | |
|--------------------------|------------------------|
| a was listening; started | d began; was deciding; |
| b fell; realised; jumped | heard |
| c swam; came; were | e climbed; hid |
| arguing | |

Exercise 4 1.19 page 22

1 c 2 a 3 e 4 d 5 b

Transcript

Still underwater, he swam close to the boat, then came up silently. Three people were arguing loudly. While he was listening to their argument, the boat's engines started. Before it started moving, Harry quickly climbed onto the back of the boat and hid. The boat began to move away. As he was deciding what to do, he heard a scream. Someone fell into the water. Harry realised who it was and jumped in too.

For further practice of past simple and past continuous contrast: Grammar Builder 2D page 126

- 5 1 dropped, broke
2 got, found
3 didn't hear, was having
4 was sitting, wasn't working
5 saw, were sitting, laughing, chatting
6 wasn't shining
7 were taking, broke down
8 lost, were playing
- 6 1 We were having dinner when my dad arrived home.
2 The phone rang while I was trying to sleep.
3 As she was climbing up some rocks, she fell.
4 You were shopping when I tidied your room.
5 The boat was sailing towards the shore when it hit some rocks.
- 7 1 arrived 2 closed 3 were sleeping 4 took off
5 saw 6 opened 7 read 8 put 9 picked up
10 went 11 was 12 wasn't raining
13 were walking 14 crossed 15 followed
16 didn't know 17 were going 18 didn't want

Exercise 5 page 22

He was getting near the boat when he heard a shout.
I was getting dressed when my friend phoned.
He was listening to their argument when the boat's engines started.
He was deciding what to do when he heard a scream.

Exercise 9 1.20 page 22

Transcript

The woman in the water was Sophie. She and Harry were both police officers. They were investigating a diamond robbery. Sophie wasn't moving so Harry held her head above the water and swam with her back to the shore. When they reached the shore, Sophie opened her eyes again. 'What happened?' asked Harry. 'I told the robbers that I wanted to buy the diamonds,' replied Sophie. 'One of them believed me, but the other didn't. He tried to kill me!' Harry looked out to the sea. The boat was turning round. 'Why are they coming back?' he said. 'They want the diamonds,' said Sophie. 'Look. I've got them! I was holding them when he pushed me into the sea!'

2E Word Skills

Word building

Exercise 2 page 23

- 1 attempt 2 complete 3 achieve 4 need
5 exploration 6 experience 7 dream

Exercise 3 page 23

-tion exploration
-ure adventure
no suffix attempt

Exercise 4 page 23

- 1 circumnavigation 2 the same 3 attempt
4 countable attempt uncountable thunder
not marked circumnavigation

Exercise 5 page 23

entertainment, eruption, examination, motivation, relaxation, rescue

Exercise 6 page 23

- 1 accomplishments 2 employment 3 preparation
4 risk 5 development 6 imagination 7 dream

2F Reading

Lost at sea

Exercise 2 page 24

a (... an American brother and sister ... were enjoying a fishing trip in the Caribbean ... when their boat sank ...)

Exercise 4 page 25

1 D 2 A 3 G 4 E 5 C

Exercise 5 page 25

B doesn't make sense because the text says '... in the water ... After an hour, the captain and the Suskis lost each other.'
F doesn't make sense because the Suskis only thought about sharks; they didn't see any.

Exercise 6 page 25

1 F 2 F 3 F 4 F 5 T 6 T 7 T

Exercise 7 page 25

1 good 2 dirty 3 hungry 4 small

Exercise 8 page 25

1 awful 2 brilliant 3 stunning 4 huge
5 astonishing 6 tragic 7 terrifying 8 exhausted

Exercise 9 page 25

(Possible answer) It was the worst food because the bananas were green (unripe) and disgusting; it was the best food because he was starving.

2G Speaking**Photo description****Exercise 1** page 26

A boots, poles, rucksack
B helmet, dinghy, life jacket, paddles
C rope, safety harness

For further practice of sports clothing and equipment: Vocabulary Builder 2G page 118

1 1 racket 2 ball 3 shirt 4 shorts 5 net
6 socks 7 goal 8 helmet 9 gloves 10 skates
11 puck 12 stick

2 **Clothing** boots; gloves; goggles; helmet; mask;
running shoes; shirt; shorts; socks; swimming trunks;
swimming costume; vest; wetsuit
Equipment ball; bat; goal; hoop; net; puck; racket;
rope; safety harness; skates; stick; surfboard

3 (Possible answers)
basketball ball, hoop; shirt, shorts
climbing rope, safety harness, helmet
football goal, net, shorts, shirt
surfing surfboard, wetsuit, swimming trunks,
swimming costume

Exercise 2 1.22 page 26

Student 2

Transcript

1 **Teacher** Please describe the photo.

Student 1 Well, on the left, there are some trees. And in the centre, there's a woman walking along. She's hiking somewhere – it looks like a forest. She's holding a pole in each hand and she's wearing a rucksack, I think. At the bottom of the picture, you can see that it's a really muddy path. But the woman doesn't look worried. She seems to be having a good time.

T Thank you.

2 **Teacher** Please describe the photo.

Student 2 The photo shows five people in a dinghy. They're white-water rafting on a river. In the top left corner of the photo, there is a man leaning out of the boat. In the foreground, there's a lot of water. The man at the back of the dinghy is trying to guide the dinghy with his paddle. The other four people aren't helping very much. It looks as if they're new to it. They're all wearing the same life jackets and helmets. I imagine they're doing this as a holiday activity.

T Thank you.

Exercise 3 1.22 page 26

1 shows 2 In 3 In 4 At 5 On 6 In 7 looks
8 looks / seems 9 seems

Transcript

See exercise 2.

Exercise 5 page 26

(Possible answers)

A Judging by her expression, I'd say she's relaxed and excited.
B To me, they look as if they're feeling excited, nervous and scared.

Exercise 6 1.23 page 26

scared, excited, bored

Transcript

Teacher Do you think the people are enjoying themselves?

Student 2 Yes, I think they are.

T Why do you think that?

S Well, basically, you can see it in their faces. They don't look scared at all. They're smiling and they seem really excited.

T Is it something that you would like to try?

S To be honest, no, I wouldn't.

T Oh? Why not?

S I think I'd be really scared. For me, the worst thing would be that I couldn't stop or get out of the dinghy. I'd have to keep going right to the end, even if I was having a bad time.
T Yes, I see what you mean. Now, can you tell me about the last time you did an outdoor activity?

S A while ago, I went on a bike ride with a friend of mine. We headed out of town and through some woods. We took food and water with us. We stayed out for about six hours, but we didn't get bored at all. In fact, it was a really good day out. I suppose that's the last time I did an outdoor activity.

T OK. Thank you.

Exercise 7 1.23 page 26

2 To be honest 3 For me 4 A while ago 5 In fact
6 I suppose

Transcript

See exercise 6.

2H Writing**An invitation****Exercise 1** page 27

A orienteering B quad biking

For further practice of outdoor activities: Vocabulary Builder 2H page 118

4 a canoeing, paddleboarding, snorkelling,
windsurfing
b hang-gliding
c cycling, karting, rollerblading, walking
d bungee jumping, camping, hiking, riding

Exercise 3 page 27

The second invitation.

1 Lisa

2 Bess

Exercise 4 page 27

- 1 It would be nice to meet up some time.
- 2 Why don't we go to the cinema?

Exercise 6 page 27

a.m. morning (*ante meridiem*, before noon)

BBQ barbecue

p.m. afternoon (*post meridiem*, after noon)

e.g. for example (*exempli gratia*)

etc. *et cetera* (to show there are more in the list)

Exam Skills Trainer 1

Reading

Exercise 1 page 28

- 1 The text is about a British student who got lost in Australia.
- 2 an article
- 3 on a website or in a newspaper or magazine
- 4 to give information about a story

Exercise 2 page 28

- 1 D 2 A 3 D 4 C 5 B

Listening

Exercise 3 page 28

A proud, bored, confused, delighted, embarrassed

B boat, canoe, climbing, diving, kayaking

C cave, cliffs, landscape, ocean, stream

D burn, condition, cure, cut, injury

Exercise 4 1.24 page 28

- 1 G 2 C 3 E 4 A 5 D 6 B

Transcript

- 1 Are you looking for the perfect gift, or an amazing experience with your friends? Then come to Extreme Elements. We offer hundreds of ideas for active people on our website. You can take flying lessons or a helicopter flight. You can drive a Ferrari or go quad biking for a day. Do you like being outdoors? Then why not try rock climbing or canoeing? And if you're really adventurous, you could go skydiving. There's something for everyone at Extreme Elements – so visit our website now!
- 2 Welcome to Water World! First, a few practical details about the timetable ... Breakfast is from seven to eight. Activities begin at nine, and lunch is at one o'clock. Activities begin again at two, and then at five o'clock there is free time until dinner. You all have personal timetables, so you should know what groups you are in, but please see me with any problems. There is a welcome lunch in one hour, and I look forward to seeing you all then.
- 3 Thank you for inviting me to Careers Week. Let me start by telling you how I got started. At school, I enjoyed sport and was in the football and basketball teams. One day, our teacher told us about a new course at the local swimming pool – scuba diving. I wasn't interested, but my friend wanted to go so I decided to go with him. Well, my friend didn't enjoy scuba diving, but I loved it! I finished the course, and then I did more. I did my teaching qualification, and now I'm an instructor.

- 4 Snowboarding is one of the most popular extreme sports, and people do it all over the world. There are snowboarding competitions at the Winter Olympics too. But it's a very young sport. In 1964 an American surfer called Sherman Poppen dreamed about 'surfing' in the mountains. So he built a surfboard for the snow – he tied two skis together and gave it to his daughter, Wendy. People saw it and liked the idea, and a year later, Poppen made wide boards and sold them in toy shops. It was the beginning of the snowboard, and the sport as we know it today.
- 5 We all know that exercise helps you to lose or to control your weight. It also helps you sleep better and look better, too. But don't forget that exercise can also be fun. You don't have to do a sport you don't enjoy. There's no need to go running if you find it boring, or swim for hours if you hate water. Why don't you choose a team game such as football or basketball? You can join a club, have fun and meet other people who enjoy that sport too. There are hundreds of different sports and exercise classes to choose from.
- 6 Do you love sport and meeting people? Then come and see local celebrity and Olympic winner Amelia Green at Brightside Leisure this Saturday at 2 p.m. She is opening the new Olympic pool that we've all been waiting for. As you know, building work started two years ago and the result is fantastic. There is a free swim for the first fifty people. Then, tickets are half-price for the next six weeks.

Use of English

Exercise 5 page 29

- 1 their 2 the 3 as 4 they 5 of 6 to 7 much
8 a 9 about 10 than

Speaking

Exercise 6 page 29

- 1, 3, 5

Map of resources

3A Vocabulary

Student's Book, pages 30–31; Workbook, page 30
Photocopiable: 3A (Films and TV programmes)

3B Grammar

Student's Book, page 32; Workbook, page 31
Photocopiable: 3B (Quantity)

3C Listening

Student's Book, page 33; Workbook, page 32

3D Grammar

Student's Book, page 34; Workbook, page 33
Photocopiable: 3D (*must*, *mustn't* and *needn't* / *don't have to*)

3E Word Skills

Student's Book, page 35; Workbook, page 34

3F Reading

Student's Book, pages 36–37; Workbook, page 35

3G Speaking

Student's Book, page 38; Workbook, page 36
Photocopiable: Functional Language Practice (Expressing likes and dislikes, preferences and reaching an agreement)

3H Writing

Student's Book, page 39; Workbook, page 37

Culture 3

Student's Book, page 110
DVD and DVD worksheet: Unit 3

Classroom Presentation Tool Unit 3

End of unit

Unit Review: Workbook, pages 38–39
Photocopiable: Grammar Review
Exam Skills Trainer 2: Workbook, pages 40–41
Cumulative Review 1–3: Workbook, pages 110–111
Progress Test and Short Tests: Unit 3

3A Vocabulary

Films and TV programmes

Exercise 1 page 30

- A Daniel Craig playing James Bond in a Bond film
B Chris Hemsworth playing Thor in a Thor or Avengers film
C Gru and the orphans in *Despicable Me*
D Alyson Hannigan and Neil Patrick Harris playing Lily and Barney in *How I Met Your Mother*

Exercise 2 1.25 page 30

- A action film B fantasy film C animation D sitcom

Transcript

See Student's Book, page 30.

Exercise 3 1.26 page 30

- 1 western 2 period drama 3 horror film
4 science fiction film 5 game show 6 news bulletin

Transcript

- 1 **Doc** What you doing in this town, Jud?
Jud It's my home town, Doc. I can come here if I want, can't I?
Doc I think you should stay away. It's a dangerous town – for people like you. Get on your horse and ride.
2 **Ann** Good day, sir.
Joseph Good day, Miss Willerby. Did you and your sisters enjoy the dance?
Ann I assume you are referring to the ball at Lord Blackstone's palace.
Joseph Indeed.
Ann I'm sorry to say that I did not enjoy it. As for my sisters, you must ask them yourself. Good day, sir!
3 **Boy** Suzie? Is that you?
Suzie It's me.
Boy But I thought ... I thought you died.
Suzie Hold my hand.
Boy It's so cold.
Suzie Come with me!
Boy Argh! Let go! Let go of my hand!
4 **Woman** Ship's computer, what is that planet?
Computer Zircon 5.
Woman Is it inhabited?
Computer Yes, but the inhabitants are primitive. They have no advanced technology.
Woman Activate shields! Their technology seems pretty advanced to me!
5 **Host** So, here comes your first question. Remember, this is for £20. What is the past form of the verb 'run'? ... OK, let's try it another way. Today, I run. Yesterday, I ...
Man Walked?
Host No, I'm sorry. I can't give you that.
6 Good evening. Two more factories in Scotland are to close, with the loss of nearly a thousand jobs. Is the government doing enough? And in sport, Chelsea lose four-nil to Manchester United. But first, the president of the United ...

Exercise 5 1.27 page 30

- 1 They agree. 2 They disagree. 3 They disagree.
4 They agree.

Transcript

- 1 **Boy** What did you think of that?
Girl It was OK. The ending was quite moving.
B I know. I was crying at an animated film. How embarrassing!
G Me too. Oh well ...
B Animations don't usually make me laugh, but there were some really funny scenes.
G Yes. Like the one on the boat. I loved that!
B So did I.
2 **Girl** Did you like that?
Boy No, I didn't! And I usually enjoy thrillers.
G Oh, why didn't you like it?
B I found the plot really confusing. It just didn't make sense.

G Well, it did – in a way. I know what you mean, but it didn't bother me. I thought the story was interesting.
B I didn't understand it.
G And it was amazing to look at. The special effects were spectacular.
B I suppose so. But I'm just not very interested in special effects.

3 Boy Did you enjoy that?

Girl Yes, I loved it. The acting was totally convincing.

B It was a bit boring though. I mean, not much happened.

G What do you mean? Lots of things happened. They argued, they fell in love, they split up ...

B Maybe I just don't like romantic comedies.

G Why not? Because there are no car chases? This film had so many other things to offer. I'm amazed you didn't like it. I'm not a fan of romantic comedies, but I found the characters really interesting.

B I just found it ... boring. Sorry!

4 Boy Well ... What did you think?

Girl I was terrified!

B Yes, you screamed when that teacher came back to life.

G Did I? How embarrassing! The soundtrack was really cool.

B I know. I want to buy it.

G The script was really unnatural in places, though.

B Horror films always have unnatural scripts.

G I know. Still, it was really good.

B Yeah!

Exercise 6 1.27 page 30

1 ending 2 scenes 3 plot 4 special effects
 5 acting 6 characters 7 soundtrack 8 script

Transcript

See exercise 5.

Exercise 7 page 31

Animations don't usually make me laugh.
 I'm not a fan of romantic comedies.

Exercise 9 page 31

Round 1 1 soap opera 2 reality show 3 talent shows

Round 2 1 characters 2 fantasy films 3 animation

Round 3 1a animation 1b musical 1c horror film

1d thriller 2 action films 3 romantic comedies

See Student's Book, page 31.

3B Grammar

Quantity

Exercise 3 page 32

some some important differences; some hobbies

any any countries or continents; any coal or oil; any food;
 any special missions

a some **b** any

Exercise 4 page 32

1 any 2 some 3 some 4 some 5 any 6 any

Exercise 5 page 32

a few conflicts; **a little** time; **a lot of** islands; **How many** cities; **How much** energy; **not many** trees or plants; **not much** pollution

a not much, a little **b** not many, a few

e a lot of **f** how much, how many

For further practice of quantifiers:

Grammar Builder 3B page 128

1 1 any 2 any 3 some 4 some 5 some
 6 some 7 some 8 any 9 some 10 some

2 1 a little 2 a few 3 a little 4 a few 5 a little
 6 a few 7 a little 8 a few

3 1 many 2 much 3 many 4 much 5 much
 6 many

4 1 How much 2 much 3 a few 4 many
 5 How many 6 a little 7 any

Exercise 6 1.28 page 32

1 some 2 any 3 much 4 some 5 many 6 much
 7 a few 8 a few 9 any 10 a little 11 a lot of 12 any

Transcript

See Student's Book, page 32.

3C Listening and speaking

Advertising

Exercise 1 page 33

1 b 2 f 3 h 4 a 5 d 6 e 7 g 8 c

Exercise 2 page 33

e

Exercise 3 1.29 page 33

1 Why not try 2 It's perfect 3 Ask for 4 Start

Transcript

Mum Your toast's ready!

Boy But I hate brown bread!

M Just try it.

B Do I have to? OK, just one bite ... Mmm! Not bad. It tastes like white bread!

M I know. But it's 100% organic wholemeal.

B Really? Well, it tastes great!

Voice-over Do you want the goodness of brown bread but the taste of white bread? Why not try Hathaway's new organic bread? It's baked from 100% wholemeal flour, with a delicious natural taste. It's perfect for sandwiches and toast. And it gives kids the energy they need for a busy day. Ask for Hathaway's organic wholemeal – a delicious and convenient food for all the family. Start the day with Hathaway.

Exercise 4 page 33

2 adults 3 Start the day with Hathaway.

Exercise 5 page 33

1 d 2 a/e 3 c 4 b

Exercise 6 1.30 page 33

1 B 2 D 3 A 4 E

Transcript

- 1 Man** So, how did it go?
Woman Not very well. For a start, I arrived late.
M Oh no! Why?
W My taxi broke down. Can you believe it?
M How awful! That's really bad luck.
W So I had to run to the interview. I looked a mess when I arrived!
M How annoying!
W And I answered the questions really badly.
M Maybe you did OK. It's difficult to know ...
W Not this time.
M But you're great at your job.
W Thanks ... but I'm disappointed because I did badly in the interview! It's a shame. Good jobs in advertising are very hard to find.
M Well, never mind. You'll get another chance. Sometimes, when one door closes, another opens ...
- 2 Satnav** At the traffic lights, go straight on.
Man Traffic lights? What traffic lights? There aren't any traffic lights!
S Turn left.
M Oh, OK.
S Turn right.
M Right? You said left!
S In fifty metres, turn right.
M Fifty metres, fifty metres. But there isn't a road! This is so confusing!
S Turn right now.
M How can I turn right when there isn't a road? How can I? I don't understand!
S Error. You have followed an incorrect route. Recalculating ...
M This is impossible. I'm exhausted. I'm turning the satnav off.
S Goodbye.
- 3 Executive** So this is the slogan for the new online advert – *Yoga holidays. Put your feet up.* And the picture shows a woman standing on her head in a yoga position.
Client 1 Mmm.
E Do you see? It's a play on words. Put your feet up ... as in, relax. But her feet are in the air. I'm really happy with that slogan.
C1 Hmm. I'm not very keen on it. She looks a bit uncomfortable to me. Have you got any other ideas?
E Well, we thought of a few others – but we rejected them. Some were inappropriate – others were just a bit boring.
Client 2 Can you tell us what they were?
E Yes, of course. Our first idea was just *Yoga: learn to relax.*
C1 Ooh, I like that. I don't think it's boring. It's clear, it's simple.
C2 I think you're right. It's perfect.
E Don't you think the new one is more amusing?
C1 No, definitely not.
E Well, of course, it's your decision ...
- 4 Shop assistant** Hello. Can I help you?
Man Yes, I bought this games console here last week and it doesn't work.
SA Oh, I'm sorry about that. So, what's the problem with it?
M I'm not very satisfied with the sound quality. There's a strange noise when I turn it on. Like this: BEEEEEP.
SA Can I hear?
M Yes. Listen.
SA Oooh, that's an unbearable noise, isn't it?
M Pardon?

- SA** I said, that's an unbearable noise. Can you switch it off?
M I can't hear you. I'll switch it off.
SA Maybe you can phone the manufacturer. They usually have a customer help desk ...
M I don't want to phone anybody. I want my money back!
SA I'm afraid we don't give refunds.
M That's shocking. You have to give a refund if the product doesn't work. I know my rights! Now, can I have my money back? Or do I need to speak to the manager?
SA I'll get the manager.

Exercise 7 1.30 page 33

- 1 annoying 2 disappointed 3 confusing 4 exhausted
 5 boring 6 amusing 7 satisfied 8 shocking

Transcript

See exercise 6.

3D Grammar

must, mustn't and needn't / don't have to

Exercise 1 page 34

(Possible answers)

The game show is *Who Wants to be a Millionaire?*
 The contestant has to pick the right answer. When they get an answer right the money goes up. For help, they can phone a friend, ask the audience or delete two wrong options.
 The correct answer is option C.

Exercise 2 1.31 page 34

- 1 must 2 needn't 3 must 4 don't have to
 5 don't have to

Transcript

See Student's Book, page 34.

Exercise 3 page 34

- 1 must 2 needn't 3 don't have to 4 mustn't

For further practice of must, mustn't and needn't / don't have to: Grammar Builder 3D page 128

- 5 1 must 2 must 3 mustn't 4 mustn't
 5 must 6 mustn't
 6 1 needn't 2 must 3 needn't 4 mustn't
 5 must 6 mustn't
 7 1 have to wear 2 must eat 3 have to drive
 4 must stop 5 must phone 6 have to take
 7 must take 8 has to get up

Exercise 4 page 34

(Possible answers) We must leave them in our bags.
 We must turn off our mobiles at the start of the lesson.
 We mustn't put them on our desk during lessons.
 We needn't / must keep them on silent all day.
 We mustn't send texts during lessons.
 We needn't / must give them to the teacher at the beginning of the lesson.

Exercise 5 page 34

- 2 We have to wear school uniform. 3 You mustn't talk in the exam. 4 I mustn't be late. 5 You must listen to me.
 6 We have to study maths at school. 7 You don't have to write the answer. 8 Jake must revise hard for his exams.

3E Word Skills

Negative adjective prefixes

Exercise 1 page 35

(Possible answer) They are warning people not to download or copy films, music, etc. illegally.

Exercise 2 page 35

Not a problem Hannah As serious as other crimes Samantha

Exercise 3 page 35

acceptable unacceptable dependent independent
fair unfair honest dishonest legal illegal
likely unlikely surprising unsurprising visible invisible

Exercise 4 page 35

synonym faithful; SYN antonym disloyal; OPP

Exercise 5 page 35

2 That answer is incorrect. 3 It's unkind to tease your little sister. 4 He was very impolite to me! 5 Don't use that old microwave. It's unsafe. 6 I'm dissatisfied with my exam results. 7 That story is unbelievable. 8 This exercise is impossible!

Exercise 6 page 35

1 illegible 2 dishonest 3 irresponsible 4 impatient
5 illegal 6 impossible

3F Reading

Video games and health

Exercise 2 page 36

Three games are mentioned: *Angry Birds*, *Minecraft*, *Farmville*

Exercise 3 page 37

Question 5 is about the whole text.

1 lines 1–6 2 lines 11–16 3 lines 21–23 4 lines 37–42

Exercise 4 page 37

1 d 2 a 3 c 4 b 5 c

Exercise 6 page 37

1 have 2 express 3 cause 4 provide 5 do 6 get
7 use 8 take part in 9 make

Exercise 7 page 37

1 They think they are bad.
2 mental skills, such as thinking about objects in 3D
3 They can prevent people from feeling anxious.
4 role-playing games / RPGs
5 huge online games like *Minecraft* and *Farmville*

Exercise 8 page 37

1 How many 2 How much 3 How many
4 How many 5 How many 6 How much

3G Speaking

Reaching an agreement

Exercise 1 page 38

1 a horror film 2 a romantic comedy 3 a period drama

Exercise 3 1.33 page 38

1a 1 b 2 c 3 3 the cinema at 6.30
4 she doesn't get on very well with Donna
5 Yes. They decide to invite Tom.

Transcript

Examiner So, which film shall we see? I quite fancy the romantic comedy. They're usually very funny and I think it'll be easy to follow.

Student Sorry, but I'm not a big fan of romantic comedies. The stories are always so silly! I'd prefer the horror film. As you can see in the poster, someone is trying to escape and it looks really exciting.

E Oh, I don't agree. I'm not keen on scary films.

S Oh, OK. What about the period drama?

E Yes, I quite like them.

S Shall we settle on that, then? It starts at seven. What time shall we meet up?

E I can come to your house at six, if you like, and we can take the bus into town.

S I'll already be in town so I'd rather meet at the cinema. Let's meet there at 6.15.

E 6.15 is a bit too early. What about 6.30?

S OK. 6.30.

E That's agreed then. Shall we invite anyone else? I think Donna likes period dramas.

S To be honest, I don't get on very well with Donna. Can we invite someone else?

E How about Tom?

S Yes, that's a great idea. I'll text him and see if he wants to come.

Exercise 4 page 38

1 fancy 2 fan 3 keen 4 stand 5 rather 6 prefer
7 better 8 settle 9 agree 10 agreed 11 idea

For further practice of expressing likes and dislikes: Vocabulary Builder 3G page 118

1 1 on 2 in 3 of 4 – 5 about 6 for 7 about
8 for

Exercise 5 1.33 page 38

I quite fancy ... I'm not a big fan of ... I'd prefer ...
I'm not keen on ... Shall we settle on ...
I'd rather ... That's agreed then. That's a great idea.

Transcript

See exercise 3.

3H Writing

An informal letter

Exercise 1 page 39

The film is *Iron Man 3*. The actor is Robert Downey Jr.

Exercise 2 page 39

- 1 I went to see a great film in 3D at the cinema last weekend – 'Iron Man 3'. I went with my friend Paddy ...
- 2 The special effects are amazing and it also has a clever plot with lots of twists. There are some funny lines in the script too.
- 3 After the film, we met some other friends at a noodle bar in town.
- 4 Do you fancy going to the cinema next week?

Exercise 3 page 39

They provide extra information.

- 1 ... because he loves the Iron Man films.
- 2 It isn't a new film, but it was definitely worth seeing again.
- 3 It was fun but I didn't really like the food. It was very spicy!
- 4 They're having a season of action films, including all the Batman series.

Exercise 4 page 39

plot, script, special effects

Exercise 5 page 39

- 1 Thanks for your letter; Sorry I didn't reply sooner.
- 2 five
- 3 no
- 4 didn't, isn't, They're
- 5 I'd better go now.

Exercise 6 page 39

Do you fancy

For further practice of social activities, go to:

Vocabulary Builder 3H page 118

- 3 1 go out for 2 go 3 go to 4 watch
- 5 play 6 go for

Map of resources**4A Vocabulary**

Student's Book, pages 40–41; Workbook, page 42

Photocopiable: 4A (Weather)

4B Grammar

Student's Book, page 42; Workbook, page 43

Photocopiable: 4B (Comparison)

4C Listening

Student's Book, page 43; Workbook, page 44

4D Grammar

Student's Book, page 44; Workbook, page 45

Photocopiable: 4D (Superlative adjectives, *too* and *enough*)**4E Word Skills**

Student's Book, page 45; Workbook, page 46

4F Reading

Student's Book, pages 46–47; Workbook, page 47

4G Speaking

Student's Book, page 48; Workbook, page 48

Photocopiable: Functional Language Practice (Expressing opinions)

4H Writing

Student's Book, page 49; Workbook, page 49

Culture 4

Student's Book, page 111

DVD and DVD worksheet: Unit 4

Classroom Presentation Tool Unit 4**End of unit**

Unit Review: Workbook, pages 50–51

Photocopiable: Grammar Review

Exam Skills Trainer 2: Student's Book, pages 50–51

Progress Test and Short Tests: Unit 4

4A Vocabulary**Weather****Exercise 2** page 41

- 1 cloud 2 storm clouds 3 foggy 4 hail 5 lightning
6 rain 7 rainy 8 raindrop 9 snowflake 10 storm
11 sun 12 sunshine 13 thunder 14 wind 15 windy

Exercise 4 1.34 page 41

A 2 B 5 C 1

Transcript

- 1 It's minus ten degrees Celsius and there's a lot of ice everywhere – on cars, on trees, on houses. The ice is 10 cm thick in some places! In a strange way, it's beautiful to look at. But icy roads are dangerous for drivers and pedestrians. And there are many homes in the area without electricity. We're expecting a little snow this afternoon.
- 2 There is some snow on the ground, and already, it's impossible to see more than a few metres ahead. There isn't any fog, but the wind is blowing the snow into my face. It's difficult just to open my eyes! It's very cold, it's very windy and this reporter is very glad to be going inside now.
- 3 It's early in the morning – just after six o'clock. There's a little frost on the grass after a cold night. But it's sunny, and temperatures are starting to rise, so it won't be frosty for long. There aren't many clouds in the sky, so I don't think any rain is on the way. But of course, conditions can change quickly.
- 4 For residents of this town, it's another cold, grey winter day. Temperatures are around zero, but because of the icy wind, it feels like minus five. There's a lot of snow in people's gardens, but the roads are clear now. However, there's a little ice on the pavements, so pedestrians have to be careful. It isn't snowing at the moment, but they say more snow is on the way.
- 5 It began this morning. The sky became very cloudy and the air felt stormy. There were a few showers and it was windy too. Everyone knew what was happening, and many people left their homes and went inland, away from the coast. Now there's a lot of rain and the wind is extremely strong. Nobody is outside; it isn't safe.

Exercise 5 1.34 page 41

- 1 a lot of ice 2 a little snow 3 some snow 4 any fog
5 a little frost 6 aren't many clouds 7 a lot of snow
8 a little ice 9 a few showers 10 a lot of rain

Transcript

See exercise 4.

4B Grammar**Comparison****Exercise 2** page 42

A shooting star is a meteor (a space rock) that is falling towards the Earth.

Exercise 3 page 42

- 1 smaller 2 larger 3 earlier 4 bigger
5 more powerful 6 further / farther

Exercise 4 page 42

- Each rock is smaller than an apple. The explosion was more powerful than the 1945 Hiroshima atomic bomb.
- ... but its effect was not as devastating as the bomb ...
- ... but they look as bright as stars in the night sky ...
- Larger meteors are much rarer ...; ... but their effects are far more spectacular ...; ... because the meteor exploded much further from the ground. ... and far bigger ...

Exercise 5 page 42

- 1 further / farther 2 fewer 3 more powerful 4 closer
5 brighter 6 more unusual

For further practice of comparative adjectives: Grammar Builder 4B page 130

- 1 1 smaller 2 larger 3 earlier 4 more powerful
5 more 6 brighter 7 fewer 8 more
9 further / farther 10 wetter 11 prettier
12 more frightening
- 2 1 happier 2 smaller 3 friendlier 4 better
5 less 6 more difficult 7 further / farther
8 colder 9 wetter 10 worse
- 3 2 The Earth is much smaller than the sun.
3 Gold is heavier than silver.
4 Rock-climbing is more dangerous than hiking.
5 Cycling is much easier than skiing.
6 The USA is far bigger than the UK.
7 Porsches are more expensive than Skodas.
8 Ice storms are far rarer than thunderstorms.
9 A broken ankle is worse than a sprained ankle.
- 4 2 The book isn't as expensive as the pen.
3 Darren isn't as tall as Lucy.
4 London isn't as far (away) as Leeds.
5 The skiing holiday is as cheap as the beach holiday.
6 French isn't as popular as Spanish.

Exercise 6 page 42

- 2 it isn't as large as 4 be as big as
3 was much smaller than 5 is much more powerful than

Exercise 7 page 42

- 2 Which is more beautiful, a snowflake or a rainbow?
3 Which holiday venue is better, the mountains or the beach?
4 Which city gets less snow, Warsaw or Moscow?
5 For you personally, which temperature is worse, -5°C or 35°C?
6 Which type of weather is more frightening, hail or lightning?
7 Which country is rainier, Spain or England?
8 In your country, which month is hotter, July or August?

4C Listening

Eyewitness

Exercise 1 1.35 page 43

- 1 There are **three** people in the doorway of a house.
2 The **boy** is wearing trousers and a hoodie. The **man** is wearing **shorts and a jacket**.
3 The boy on the left has a blue **hoodie** and **blue trousers**.
4 He **isn't** crying.
5 Next to him there's a man with a **silver** bucket.
6 He's emptying the water **onto the street**.
7 She looks **happy**.

Transcript

There are two people in the doorway of a house. They are cleaning up after a flood. They are wearing trousers and hoodies. The boy on the left has a blue T-shirt and red shorts. He's crying. Next to him there's a man with a blue bucket.

He is emptying the water into a container. The water in the street is brown and muddy. Behind them, there is a woman. She looks very unhappy.

Exercise 2 1.36 page 43

Dialogue 1

- 1 a boy and his mother (he says 'Bye, Mum!')
2 in the morning (he's on his way to school)
3 at home (he says 'I'm off to school now.')

Dialogue 2

- 1 a couple / husband and wife (she says 'Bye, darling!')
2 around lunchtime (he says 'And what about your lunch?')
3 at home (he says they can take cover in the cellar)

Dialogue 3

- 1 two children / a brother and sister (he says 'Where's the money Mum gave you?')
2 in the morning (she says 'I'm still full from breakfast.')
- 3 at the beach / a swimming pool (he says 'Shall we go for a swim?')

Transcript

- 1 **Boy** Bye, Mum! I'm off to school now. See you about four.
Mum Don't forget your coat. It might rain this afternoon.
Boy OK. I've got it.
- 2 **Man** I can just see the tornado on the horizon. But it's very dark out there.
Woman It's the storm clouds. Shall we go out and take a closer look?
M I feel safer here because we can take cover in the cellar. And what about your lunch?
W I'll finish it later. I'm going out to take a look. Bye, darling!
- 3 **Boy** The sun's so hot! Shall we get an ice cream?
Girl Not yet. I'm still full from breakfast.
B Well, I'm going to. Where's the money mum gave you?
G Oh no, I left it on the kitchen table!
B Oh, well done. Shall we go for a swim?
G OK. Can we leave our bags here?
B Yes, they'll be OK. We can see them from the water.

Exercise 3 1.37 page 43

- 1 B 2 A 3 E 4 C 5 D

Transcript

- 1 **Journalist** Can you tell me what happened?
Man It was terrifying. It was in the middle of the night so we were in bed. Everything started to shake. A few moments later, the back of the house collapsed. We all rushed outside and stood in the street. Luckily, we all survived and no one was injured.
J And this place is now your home?
M Yes, we came here yesterday. The church has been very helpful. We have food and water and a roof over our heads, so it's better than nothing. But we've lost everything.
- 2 There's been virtually no rain in the region for the past two years. Normally it's very rainy at this time of year, but the last rain was two months ago. My organisation back home raises a lot of money and sends it out to us. My job is to spend it on food and drinking water, but we urgently need more. The government here provides some food and water, but it isn't enough. Politicians make a lot of promises, but they often break them. Hopefully the rain will come before long.

- 3 **Boy** Did you see that fire on the news last night?
Girl No. Where was it?
B In California.
G Was anyone killed?
B I don't think so. But it destroyed a lot of houses. The pictures were shocking. The fire moved so fast!
G How did it start? Was it lightning from that storm yesterday?
B No, there weren't any storms in California. Somebody lit a fire in the forest.
G So it wasn't an accident?
B Well, it was, actually. They were going to have a barbecue.
G That was a bit stupid, in the middle of a heatwave! Did they find the people who started it?
B Yes, they were the ones who phoned the emergency services.
- 4 Scientists said last year that it was going to erupt. Well, it finally erupted a couple of days ago and lava poured down the mountain. It destroyed a village and sadly a number of people lost their lives. And the eruption continues – you can still see lava coming out of the ground high up on the mountain, and clouds of smoke are still pouring from the top. But it isn't as bad as it was yesterday.
- 5 During the fishing trip, the weather was fine – mostly sunny and warm. The sea was quite calm and we were about to return to the port when we saw a wave on the horizon. We were quite close to the shore, maybe only a kilometre away. But instead of returning home, we decided to sail out to sea, towards the wave. This sounds mad, but waves like this are actually quite low when they are far out to sea and only become big as they reach shallow water near the coast. It was a wise decision, as the boat rode easily over the wave. The wave caused a lot of damage when it reached the shore, but luckily no one was killed.

Exercise 4 1.37 **page 43**
 1 c 2 a 3 b 4 c 5 b

Transcript
 See exercise 3.

Exercise 5 **page 43**
avalanche a very large amount of snow, ice and rock that falls down the side of a mountain
drought a long time when there is not enough rain
earthquake a sudden strong shaking of the ground
epidemic a disease that many people in a place have at the same time
famine a famine happens when there is not enough food in a country
flood when there is a flood, a lot of water covers the land
forest fire a fire that happens in a large area of land covered with trees
mudslide a large amount of soft wet earth sliding down a mountain
tornado a violent storm with very strong winds which move in a circle
tsunami a very large wave in the sea, usually caused by the sudden strong shaking of the ground
volcanic eruption when a volcano (a mountain with a hole in the top where fire, gas, and liquid rock, called lava,

sometimes come out) erupts, the burning rocks, etc. are thrown out from the volcano

4D Grammar

Superlative adjectives, *too* and *enough*

Exercise 1 **page 44**
 (Possible answer) There was a tsunami and a wave lifted the ship, and carried it onto dry land.

Exercise 3 **page 44**
 1 the toughest 2 the biggest
 3 the most powerful; the most difficult
 4 the worst 5 the most powerful (earthquake ever) in Japan; the (fifth) most powerful in the world

Exercise 4 **page 44**
 2 The earliest 3 The deadliest 4 The deepest
 5 the smallest 6 most destructive

For further practice of superlative adjectives: Grammar Builder 4D (Part 1) **page 130**

- 5 1 the biggest 2 the scariest 3 the worst
 4 the furthest / farthest 5 the best 6 the most intelligent
- 6 1 the most intelligent; in 2 the best; of
 3 the worst; in 4 the biggest; of
 5 the shortest; of 6 the highest; in
- 7 2 What is the best day of the week?
 3 What is the worst day of the week?
 4 What is the most beautiful city in your country?
 5 Who is the best-looking actor on TV?

Exercise 5 **page 44**
 1 before 2 after 3 before

For further practice of *too* and *enough*: Grammar Builder 4D (Part 2) **page 130**

- 9 (Possible answers)
 You are too short to reach that shelf.
 This pizza is too hot to eat.
 The sky's too cloudy to see the stars.
 It's too cold to swim in the sea.
 This suitcase is too heavy to lift.
- 10 (Possible answers)
 You aren't tall enough to reach that shelf.
 This pizza isn't cool enough to eat.
 The sky isn't clear enough to see the stars.
 It isn't warm enough to swim in the sea.
 This suitcase isn't light enough to lift.

Exercise 6 **page 44**
 2 Skiing holidays are too expensive for me.
 3 My dad's old car isn't safe enough to drive.
 4 The storm wasn't strong enough to cause much damage.
 5 My shoes are too dirty to wear to the party.
 6 The sky isn't clear enough to see the moon.

Exercise 7 page 44

- 2 Who's the most attractive actor in the world?
- 3 What's the funniest comedy on TV?
- 4 What's the most interesting city in your country?
- 5 Who's the worst singer in the world?
- 6 What's the most dangerous animal in the world?

4E Word Skills**Phrasal verbs****Exercise 1** page 45

(Possible answers)

The smoke from the chimneys is polluting the air. / The chimneys from the factory are pouring out smoke and polluting the air. / The factory is causing air pollution. Air pollution makes it difficult to breathe.

Exercise 2 1.38 page 45

- 1 surface 2 fossil 3 greenhouse 4 global 5 rain
- 6 climate 7 Sea 8 ice 9 renewable

Transcript

See Student's Book, page 45.

Exercise 3 page 45

Similar meaning to the main verb heat up, give off, cut down, die out **Different meaning from the main verb** run out

Exercise 4 page 45

Emma is more worried.

Exercise 5 page 45

- 1 carry on (different)
- 2 put off (different)
- 3 give up (different)
- 4 look after (different)
- 5 come up with (different)
- use up (similar); wake up (similar); close down (similar);
- rely on (similar)

Exercise 6 page 45

- 1 out 2 cut 3 up 4 down 5 used
- 6 up 7 looked

Exercise 7 page 45

- 1 opinion 2 believe 3 seems 4 honest 5 see
- 6 disagree 7 wrong 8 true

4F Reading**Gliders in the storm****Exercise 3** page 46

1, 3, 4, 5, 6, 10

Exercise 4 page 46

1 H 2 B 3 K 4 E 5 A 6 J 7 D 8 C 9 F 10 I

Exercise 5 page 47

- 1 spin 2 take off 3 land 4 approach
- 5 reach 6 head

Exercise 6 page 47

- 1 What were you doing in Australia?

- 2 What was the weather like that morning?
- 3 Why did you take off?
- 4 What can you remember about the storm?
- 5 What was the most terrifying part of the experience?
- 6 How did you feel afterwards?

4G Speaking**Photo comparison****Exercise 1** page 48

- A street market
- B parade
- C music festival

Exercise 2 page 48

lamp post, pedestrian crossing, road sign, shop sign, traffic light

For further practice of street vocabulary:**Vocabulary Builder 4G** page 119

- 1 Yes

Exercise 3 2.02 page 48

Candidate 1: photos A and B

Candidate 2: photos B and C

Yes, they do.

Transcript

- 1 The first photo shows three teenage girls and a boy. I think they're at a music festival. They are walking down a muddy path. In the second photo, I can see a street market at night. It can't be in Britain because some of the shop signs aren't in English. In the foreground, a young man and woman are walking along the street. In the background, there are a few other people. Both photos show people in their free time. One obvious difference is that the first photo is taken during the day and the second photo is taken at night. In the first photo, it must be a rainy day because they're wearing raincoats. In the second photo, it must be a cold night because the people are wearing winter coats and scarves. In the first photo the people don't look very happy, especially the girl in the middle and the boy in the background. Perhaps they're feeling fed up because of the weather. In the second photo, the man and woman are probably feeling cold, but not unhappy.
- 2 In the first photo, I can see a big crowd of people in a very wide street. They're standing on the pavement and they're watching a parade. There are lots of flags. The second photo shows a group of four people. I think they are in a field. They are walking towards us. They're wearing raincoats and boots. The common theme in the photos is festivals. The people in the second photo are at a music festival and the people in the first photo are at a street festival, I think. One obvious difference is the weather. In the first photo, it is warm and dry, but in the second photo it's rainy. The people in the second photo don't look very happy – probably because of the bad weather. I can't really see the expressions on the faces of the people in the first photo, but I imagine they're happy as they are at a festival and the weather is fine.

Exercise 4  2.02 **page 48**

- 1 It can't be in Britain because some of the shop signs aren't in English.
- 2 It must be a rainy day because they are wearing raincoats.
- 3 It must be a cold night because the people are wearing winter coats and scarves.

Transcript

See exercise 3.

Exercise 6  2.03 **page 48**

The second photo shows ..., The common theme in the photos is ..., One obvious difference is ..., In the first photo ..., but in the second photo ...

Transcript

See exercise 3.

4H Writing**An article****Exercise 3** **page 49**

- 1 two 2 two 3 yes

Exercise 4 **page 48**

- 1 recycle 2 reduce 3 cause 4 alter 5 lead
6 combat

For further practice of climate change collocations:**Vocabulary Builder 4H** **page 119**

- 3 2 rely on 3 emit 4 reduce 5 invest in
6 reduce 8 save
- 4 1 invest in renewable energy 2 save energy
3 rely on fossil fuels 4 emit carbon dioxide
5 protect endangered species
6 reduce carbon emissions

Exercise 5 **page 49**

- A It seems to me that B There are people who believe that C Nevertheless D What is more

For further practice of the zero conditional:**Grammar Builder 4H** **page 130**

- 11 1 use; reduce 2 cut down; destroy 3 can; conserve 4 save; don't leave 5 burn; gives off

Exam Skills Trainer 2**Reading****Exercise 1** **page 50**

- 2 always positive
- 3 this time
- 4 Most, end of the year
- 5 surprised, the writer, and her family
- 6 the whole time
- 7 flooded
- 8 less than a week

Exercise 2 **page 50**

- 1 F 2 T 3 F 4 T 5 F 6 F 7 F 8 T

Listening**Exercise 3** **page 50**

(Possible answers)

Science and space: astronaut, atmosphere, meteor, moon, planet, spaceship

Exercise 4  2.04 **page 50**

- 1 C 2 B 3 B 4 A 5 B

Transcript

Hello and thank you for asking me to come and speak to you today. I'd like to start by telling you a little bit about how I became a space scientist. I was always interested in the stars and spent a lot of time as a child staring out of my window at the night sky. I also read books from the library and learned all about the planets and famous astronomers such as Galileo, who studied the stars. I used to stand in the garden and point out the names of the planets to my very patient parents.

Science wasn't really my favourite subject when I was at school. I preferred maths, although I wasn't very good at it. I also played the violin and the piano very well and I thought for a while that music would be my future career. But then I went on a school trip to the Science Museum in London. There was an exhibition about the history of space travel and also a film about shooting stars. I thought it was amazing that most of the shooting stars we see are meteoroids. These objects can be small, like sand, or larger rocks. A meteoroid becomes a meteor when it hits the atmosphere and leaves a bright light behind it. That night, I was looking out of my window and there was a shooting star. I was so excited I decided right then that I would be a space scientist! I worked hard at school and studied physics at university. After that, I worked for several years as a research assistant at different universities in Britain, and later in Japan. During that time, I worked on a very exciting space mission to Mars. Now I'm back in Britain working on another space mission. People ask me how to become a space scientist. Well, it isn't easy, but I'm proof that it's possible. It doesn't matter too much which university you go to, but you need to get the best science degree you can and then go from there. Follow your dreams and don't give up!

Use of English**Exercise 5** **page 51**

- 1 C 2 C 3 B 4 C 5 A 6 B 7 B 8 A

Speaking**Exercise 6** **page 51**

- 1 Sp 2 Si 3 D 4 Sp 5 D 5 D 6 Si

Writing**Exercise 8** **page 51**

Spelling: storie (story), realy (really), speciel (special)
Punctuation: thats (that's), good? (good.)

Map of resources

5A Vocabulary

Student's Book, pages 52–53; Workbook, page 52

Photocopiable: 5A (Jobs)

5B Grammar

Student's Book, page 54; Workbook, page 53

Photocopiable: 5B (*will* and *going to*)

5C Listening

Student's Book, page 55; Workbook, page 54

5D Grammar

Student's Book, page 56; Workbook, page 55

Photocopiable: 5D (First conditional)

5E Word Skills

Student's Book, page 57; Workbook, page 56

5F Reading

Student's Book, pages 58–59; Workbook, page 57

5G Speaking

Student's Book, page 60; Workbook, page 58

5H Writing

Student's Book, page 61; Workbook, page 59

Culture 5

Student's Book, page 112

DVD and DVD worksheet: Unit 5

Classroom Presentation Tool Unit 5

End of unit

Unit Review: Workbook, page 60–61

Photocopiable: Grammar Review

Photocopiable: Vocabulary Review

Exam Skills Trainer 3: Workbook, pages 62–63

Cumulative Review I–5: Workbook, pages 112–113

Progress Test and Short Tests: Unit 5

Cumulative Test: Units 1–5

5A Vocabulary

Jobs

Exercise 2  2.05 page 52

A engineer **B** hairdresser **C** paramedic **D** architect

Transcript

See Student's Book, page 52.

Exercise 4  2.06 page 52

Best paid engineer, architect, dentist, pilot, programmer, solicitor, paramedic

Worst paid cleaner, farm worker, hairdresser, receptionist, sales assistant, waiter, sports coach, travel agent

Transcript

Girl What are you reading?

Boy It's an article about different jobs and how much you can earn. Look – engineer is one of the best-paid jobs in the country. That's good news.

G Why is it good news?

B Because I want to be an engineer.

G Oh, OK. What are some of the others?

B Some of the other best-paid jobs? Er ... architect, dentist, pilot, programmer, solicitor ...

G What about paramedic? That's what I want to be.

B Er ... yes. Here it is. It is one of the best-paid jobs.

G Great! What are the worst-paid?

B There are lots: cleaner, farm worker, hairdresser, receptionist, sales assistant, waiter, sports coach ...

G What about travel agents? My sister wants to be a travel agent ...

B Travel agent ... let me see. That's one of the worst-paid jobs.

G Oh dear, maybe she should think of something else.

Exercise 6 page 53

(Possible answers)

E be on your feet, work with children

F be on your feet, work outdoors, work nine-to-five

G be on your feet, wear a uniform, work outdoors, work with children

H answer the phone, be part of a team, deal with the public, make phone calls, use a computer, work indoors

Exercise 7 2.07 page 53

2 repetitive **3** rewarding **4** stressful

Transcript

Ellie I wanted to earn some money last summer, so I got a job as an au pair. It was with a family from Greece who had three young children. Actually, I didn't earn much money – au pairs don't. But I didn't have to pay for food or rent or anything, so it was fine. The family lived in London, but they travelled a lot because the parents both had well-paid jobs in banking. So I travelled with the family. It was fun. We stayed in some beautiful hotels. The kids were lovely too, but it was hard work looking after them! I was exhausted by the end of each day.

Tom I really wanted to work outdoors over the summer, so when I saw the advertisement for a job as a gardener, I applied for it. I did it for five weeks, and to be honest, I didn't really enjoy it very much. I was unlucky with the weather – it was a very rainy summer. But the main problem was, I had to do the same thing every day. It got really boring because there was no variety. At least the hours weren't too long. I started at ten in the morning and finished at four in the afternoon. Then I went home. Most days, I didn't see another person all the time I was there. I didn't like that either, really. I prefer working with other people.

Katie I really enjoyed my job at a summer camp. It was seven days a week, so hard work, but that was fine. The children had lessons in the morning. Then every afternoon, I'd do sports with them: football, volleyball, athletics, lots of different things. There were five of us working as sports

coaches. We all got on really well, which was great, and we helped each other to plan the afternoon. We arranged matches and competitions for the evenings too, so we usually had to work really late – but we didn't mind. Seeing the children enjoying themselves and learning new activities was great. I loved it.

Fynn Over the summer, I spent four weeks at a call centre, working as a charity fundraiser. I hated it! From nine in the morning until five in the afternoon, I had to phone people and basically ask for money. OK, so it was money for charity – a wildlife charity. But people didn't want to talk to me, and sometimes they were quite rude. I got very anxious about making the calls. And I didn't like being indoors all the time, in a small room, with about twenty other people. That made me even more anxious. I felt trapped. I mean, the money was quite good, but I didn't enjoy the work at all. Never again!

Exercise 8 page 53

1 didn't earn 2 travelled 3 didn't work 4 wasn't
5 worked / was 6 worked 7 worked 8 made

Exercise 9 2.07 page 53

Transcript

See exercise 7.

5B Grammar

will and going to

Exercise 2 2.08 page 54

Transcript

See Student's Book, page 54.

Exercise 3 page 54

I'll move my bag ... ; I won't chat ... ; I'm going to leave ... ;
It'll take ... ; I'm going to get ... ; I'll lend ... ; I'll call ... ;
I'll give ... ; Where will you be?; I'll wait ...

Exercise 4 page 54

a 1 I'm going to get wet 2 It'll take; Where will you be
b 1 I'm going to leave 2 I'll call
c I'll move my bag; I won't chat; I'll lend; I'll give; I'll wait

For further practice of will and going to:

Grammar Builder 5B page 132

- 1 1 will 2 Will; won't 3 is going to 4 Will; will
5 won't 6 won't 7 Will; won't 8 won't
2 2 I'll eat them. 3 I'll invite her.
4 I'll video us. 5 I'll tell you. 6 I'll ask him.
4 1 They aren't going to catch the bus. 2 The
boat is going to sink. 3 The rope is going to
break. 4 She's going to get a shock.
5 1 'm going to 2 'll 3 isn't going to
4 'll 5 'll 6 'll

Exercise 5 page 54

2 I'm going to start 3 are you going to do
4 'm going to study 5 I'm going to get 6 will be
7 will be 8 'm not going to do 9 'll get
10 'm not going to apply 11 'm going to start
12 'll be 13 won't be

Exercise 6 2.09 page 54

to in going to is pronounced /tu:/.

Transcript

Mia Here's your umbrella.

Toby Thanks. Well? Are you going to tell me about the interview?

M I got the job. I'm going to start on 1 August! It's just for the summer.

T What are you going to do after that?

M I'm going to study maths at university. Then I'm going to get a job in finance. That's the plan.

T Why finance?

M It pays well. My salary will be quite high.

T Do you think it will be rewarding?

M I don't know, Toby. At the moment, I'm more interested in being successful.

T Me too. That's why I'm not going to do a degree.

M I don't think you'll get a very good job without a degree.

T I'm not going to apply for a job. I'm going to start my own business.

M What kind of business?

T A web-based marketing company. I predict I'll be a millionaire before I'm 25!

M Really?

T It won't be easy. But I'm confident.

M Well, good luck!

5C Listening

Changing jobs

Exercise 1 page 55

A locksmith B estate agent C groundskeeper
D stunt performer E builder

Exercise 3 page 55

1 although; however; nevertheless; in spite of this; on the other hand 2 what is more; moreover; not only that 3 for example; for instance; such as 4 in other words; what I mean is 5 in my opinion; as I see it 6 that's because; therefore

Exercise 4 2.10 page 55

B 2 C 4 D 1 E 3 F 6

Transcript

A Cathy wants to become a journalist. However, ...

B Working as a pizza delivery man is quite stressful. What's more, ...

C I think builders have a very boring job. What I mean is, ...

D The job of gardener is very creative and challenging. In spite of this, ...

E I'd like to have a job that pays well, such as ...

F The job of sales assistant is very tiring. That's because ...

Exercise 5 2.11 page 55

Transcript

A Cathy wants to become a journalist. However, her father wants her to work in the family shop.

B Working as a pizza delivery man is quite stressful. What's more, it's badly paid.

C I think builders have a very boring job. What I mean is, the work is very repetitive.

- D The job of gardener is very skilled and challenging. In spite of this, it isn't very well paid.
 E I'd like to have a job that pays well, such as stunt performer or police officer.
 F The job of sales assistant is very tiring. That's because you're on your feet all day.

Exercise 6 page 55

(Possible answers)

- 1 Nevertheless, it is rewarding.
- 2 For instance, they have to work long hours.
- 3 Not only that, but you will earn more money.
- 4 As I see it, parents should have to pay for their children.
- 5 That's because you have to deal with the public.

Exercise 7 2.12 page 55

- a His dad told him to do something he was passionate about, but he didn't know what that was. He set up a website and asked employers to give him a job for just one week and he did a new job every week.
- b He was always short of money because he donated all of his money to charity.
- c He learned that you need to be passionate about your job if you're to enjoy it, your job has to have meaning and it's important to work with people that you get on with.

Transcript

Interviewer Today in our series about unusual jobs, I'm talking to Sean Aiken. Sean spent a year doing not one job, but 52 – one for each week of the year. Hello Sean, and welcome to the show.

Sean Hi.

I So when did you come up with the idea?

S It was when I finished university – I realised I didn't know what I wanted to do in life.

I What did you study at university?

S I did business studies, but I had no idea what to do with my degree.

I So, how did you come up with the idea of 52 jobs?

S Well, I asked my dad for advice and he said I should do something I was passionate about – but I didn't know what that was! So I set up the website: oneweekjob.com. I asked employers all over the world to give me a job for just one week and I would do a new job every week.

I Fifty-two different jobs!

S Yes, one a week for a whole year. I wanted to discover what I'm truly passionate about.

I How did you find 52 jobs? It's difficult enough to find one!

S Some people offered me a job when they heard about what I was doing, but I found most of the jobs by searching online.

I What jobs did you do? Give us some examples.

S Radio DJ, fireman, journalist, yoga teacher, baker ... I couldn't find all the jobs in one place, of course, so I had to travel a lot.

I Did you take any holiday?

S No, I worked for 52 weeks without stopping. It was incredibly tiring, travelling between each job, finding somewhere to stay – I often had to sleep on someone's sofa for a week. And I was always short of money. But in spite of that, I've had an amazing time and met some fantastic people.

I You were short of money? Didn't your employers pay you?

S They paid me, but I never had much money to spend.

That's because I donated all of my wages to charity.

I What was the most challenging job?

S Working on a farm. That was so hard! I had to get up at five o'clock every morning and the work was very tiring!

I So what did you learn from your 52 jobs?

S I learned that to enjoy your job, you need to be really passionate about it. Your job has to have meaning – it's more than just money. And it's important that you work with people that you get on with and who have similar interests to you.

I So, would you do it again?

S Well, at the moment, I'm helping other people around the world to do their own '52 week job' project. I've found that I'm passionate about helping others!

I Thank you very much for coming in and talking to us, Sean.

S My pleasure.

Exercise 8 2.12 page 55

1 F 2 F 3 T 4 F 5 F 6 T

Transcript

See exercise 7.

5D Grammar

First conditional

Exercise 1 page 56

(Possible answers)

The man's job is to operate the lift. He is pressing buttons to open and close the doors and move the lift to different floors.

Exercise 3 page 56

1 present simple 2 will + verb If newspapers disappear entirely, we won't need newsagents. And what will happen if everyone learns online instead of in a classroom?

Exercise 4 page 56

1 b 2 e 3 c 4 a 5 d

For further practice of the first conditional:

Grammar Builder 5D page 132

- 6 1 don't hurry up 2 have 3 becomes 4 drop
5 don't understand 6 wants
- 7 1 'll reply 2 won't go 3 will worry 4 'll have
5 won't be 6 'll lend
- 8 2 f; If the weather is bad, we won't have a barbecue. / We won't have a barbecue if the weather is bad.
3 a; if you don't listen to the instructions, you won't know what to do. / You won't know what to do if you don't listen to the instructions.
4 e; If she doesn't invite Joe to her party, he will be upset. / Joe will be upset if she doesn't invite him to her party.
5 b; If we don't leave now, we'll miss the train. / We'll miss the train if we don't leave now.
6 d; If the match is on TV, I'll watch it. / I'll watch the match if it's on TV.

Exercise 5 page 56

- 1 'I'll quit; don't get 2 're; 'I'll do 3 'I'll look for; pass
 4 don't go; won't earn 5 'I'll be; find
 6 goes; will (you) fix

Exercise 6 page 56

- 1 'I'll pass 2 work 3 get 4 'I'll apply 5 aren't
 6 'I'll probably go 7 have 8 'I'll email 9 don't have
 10 'I'll be 11 find 12 'I'll be able to

5E Word Skills**Prefixes****Exercise 2** page 56

Because Peter Thiel, a multi-millionaire and co-creator of PayPal, is paying for him to develop his own business.

Exercise 3 page 57

co-creator, ex-student, multi-millionaire, overestimate, postgraduate, semi-finals, undervalue

Exercise 4 page 57

- 2 My mum is underpaid for the job she does. 3 Mick overslept and missed his bus. 4 We drove to the match in the school minibus. 5 Please rewrite the sentence. 6 We live in a multicultural society.

5F Reading**Dream jobs****Exercise 2** page 58

- A 3, b B 2, a C 1, d

Exercise 3 page 58

- 1 loved 2 get paid for 3 works 4 degree 5 It's a great job because 6 The only problem with

Exercise 4 page 58

- 1 video 2 hobby 3 department store 4 good quality
 5 work 6 choose

Exercise 5 page 58

- 1 look 2 notice 3 send 4 offer 5 join
 6 take 7 have 8 have

5G Speaking**Choosing a job****Exercise 1** page 60

- 1 C 2 A 3 B

For further practice of personal qualities:**Vocabulary Builder 5G** page 119

- 1 2 friendly 3 good at communicating 4 honest
 5 enthusiastic 6 physically fit 7 sensitive
 9 organised 10 punctual 11 outgoing
 12 hard-working 13 reliable 14 patient

- 2 (Possible answers) unenthusiastic; unfriendly;
 dishonest; physically unfit; insensitive; inflexible;
 disorganised; lazy; unreliable

Exercise 3 2.14 page 60

- 1 sales assistant
 2 she's interested in fashion.
 3 Fruit-picking is hard work and she isn't physically fit. She doesn't want to work in a kitchen, so she won't apply to be a dish-washer.

Transcript

Examiner So, we have three jobs available this summer. Have you had a chance to look at them?

Candidate Yes, I have.

E Good. So, what about the job of fruit-picker?

C I'm not sure about that one. Although it's well-paid, it will be very tiring. You have to work all day in the fields. Not only that, but it might be rainy and windy, too, so you'll get very wet and cold. But you can't stop working!

E Some people like the idea of being outside in the fresh air all day.

C I know, but I prefer working inside.

E That's fine. Well, what about the job of sales assistant?

C Yes, I quite like the look of that one.

E Why is that?

C Well, I'm very keen on fashion so I'll find it interesting to work in a clothes shop. I'm sure I'll enjoy it even though the hours are long. And the money isn't great ...

E What about this third job: dish-washer. It's better paid than the sales assistant. And it says you'll be part of a friendly team.

C Hmm. Yes, I like the idea of being part of a team. But I don't think washing up in a restaurant kitchen will be very rewarding. It will be really repetitive.

E Yes, I see what you mean. But at least it's indoors, not outdoors!

C True. But kitchens are usually very hot. It won't be a very nice place to work. And I'll find the work stressful, too, because people shout a lot in restaurant kitchens!

E So, which job do you want to apply for? Are you able to decide now?

C Hmm. Well, I'm not choosing fruit-picking. That's really hard work, and I'm not very physically fit! I won't apply for the job of dish-washer either. The job is quite well-paid. However, I really don't want to work in a kitchen. So I'd like to apply for the job of sales assistant. The pay is not very good. Nevertheless, I'm choosing this job because I'm interested in fashion.

Exercise 4 2.14 page 60

- 1 well-paid 2 tiring 3 hours 4 long 5 well-paid
 6 kitchen 7 pay 8 choosing

Transcript

See exercise 3.

5H Writing

An application letter

Exercise 1 page 61

a 2 b 7 c 3 d 4 e 6 f 1 g 5

Exercise 2 page 61

2 E 3 A 4 B 5 C

Exercise 3 page 61

- 1 Paragraph B – she is going to start a degree in design at Brighton University in October. Before that she is keen to find a position in fashion.
- 2 Paragraph C – she is hard-working, honest and reliable.

Exercise 4 page 61

- 1 Application for the role of sales assistant
- 2 yes (paragraphs A and E)
- 3 a I am keen to ... b I believe I possess ...
c ... on request
- 4 Because she does not know the name of the person she is writing to.

For further practice of formal language: Vocabulary Builder 5H page 119

- 4 1 telephone; require 2 obtain; manager
3 possess; succeed 4 sit; available
5 many; wish 6 opportunity; discuss

Map of resources

6A Vocabulary

Student's Book, pages 62–63; Workbook, page 64

Photocopiable: 6A (Worth a visit)

6B Grammar

Student's Book, page 64; Workbook, page 65

Photocopiable: 6B (Present perfect)

6C Listening

Student's Book, page 65; Workbook, page 66

6D Grammar

Student's Book, page 66; Workbook, page 67

Photocopiable: 6D (Contrast: past simple and present perfect)

6E Word Skills

Student's Book, page 67; Workbook, page 68

6F Reading

Student's Book, pages 68–69; Workbook, page 69

6G Speaking

Student's Book, page 70; Workbook, page 70

Photocopiable: Functional Language Practice (Making suggestions and responding)

6H Writing

Student's Book, page 71; Workbook, page 71

Culture 6

Student's Book, page 113

DVD and DVD worksheet: Unit 6

Classroom Presentation Tool Unit 6

End of unit

Unit Review: Workbook, pages 72–73

Photocopiable: Grammar Review

Exam Skills Trainer 3: Student's Book, pages 72–73

Progress Test and Short Tests: Unit 6

Photo C is the Statue of Liberty in the USA. It's number 1 on the map.

Photo D is Machu Picchu in Peru. It's number 2 on the map.

Photo E is Hong Kong harbour in China. It's number 7 on the map.

Photo F is the Maasai Mara National Reserve, a national park in Kenya. It's number 6 on the map.

Photo G is Buckingham Palace, in England. It's number 3 on the map.

Exercise 6 2.16 page 63

the Czech Republic, (Slovakia,) Hungary, Croatia, Italy

Transcript

Good morning, ladies and gentleman, and welcome back to your Golden Days coach tour across Europe. I hope you all enjoyed your day in Berlin yesterday. Well, today, we're going to head south across Germany and over the border into the Czech Republic. We're going to spend a day in the capital, Prague, and will visit Havel's Market. There you can buy souvenirs, paintings ... It's quite touristy, but there are lots of interesting things to see. After some more sightseeing in Prague, we're going to head south-east across Slovakia and into Hungary. There's lots to see and do in Budapest, but I recommend visiting the Liberty Statue. It's very impressive. When we leave Hungary, we'll travel south through Croatia, all the way down to Dubrovnik. The old harbour there is a very romantic place to have dinner in the evening. The next day, we're crossing to Italy by ferry. Rome is the next – and final – stop on our tour. And when we're in Rome, don't miss the wonderful and historic Trevi Fountain. Now, are there any questions? No? Well, fasten your seat belts and let's set off!

Exercise 7 2.16 page 63

2 The Liberty Statue: Hungary – impressive

3 The Old Harbour: Croatia – romantic

4 The Trevi Fountain: Italy – historic

Transcript

See exercise 6.

6B Grammar

Present perfect

Exercise 2 page 64

The city is Florence, Italy. Ella is enjoying the holiday more.

Exercise 3 page 64

a He's passed his driving test!

b The weather hasn't been very good, so we've been to a lot of museums and art galleries. I've seen Michelangelo's *David*. I've bought you a souvenir. Have you missed me? ... we haven't done much. In fact, we've spent most of our time in museums. I've seen about five hundred paintings and I've had enough! Ella hasn't asked me what I want to do.

c How long have we been friends?

d We've been in Florence for three days. We've been in Florence since Monday.

6A Vocabulary

Worth a visit

Exercise 1 page 62

A 4 B 5 C 1 D 2 E 7 F 6 G 3

Exercise 2 page 62

A tower B mosque C statue D ruins
E harbour F national park G palace

Exercise 3 2.13 page 62

Transcript

Photo A is the Eiffel Tower in France. It's number 4 on the map.

Photo B is the Blue Mosque in Turkey. It's number 5 on the map.



Exercise 4 page 64

be We've been in Florence for three days. The weather hasn't been very good ... We've been in Florence since Monday. How long have we been friends?

go ... so we've been to a lot of museums and art galleries.

For further practice of the present perfect:

Grammar Builder 6B page 134

- 1 1 My sister hasn't finished her exams.
2 Have you played this new computer game?
3 My dog has broken its leg.
4 My parents have been to New York.
5 Have you seen my trainers?
6 My cousin has applied for a new job.
- 2 2 asked 3 taken 4 met 5 used 6 seen 7 done
8 reached 9 stopped 10 put 11 been 12 spent
- 3 1 have dropped 2 have bought 3 have been;
haven't spent 4 has stopped 5 have had
6 Have you met 7 has he had 8 have lived
- 4 1 for 2 since 3 for 4 for 5 since
- 5 1 gone 2 gone 3 been 4 gone 5 been

Exercise 5 page 64

- 2 have you been 3 've been 4 Have you reached
5 've stopped 6 've visited 7 haven't bought
8 Have you taken 9 haven't put 10 has broken
11 's been 12 've used

Exercise 6 2.17 page 64

Transcript

Ted Hello?

Molly Hi Ted, it's Molly!

T Hi, Molly. Are you enjoying your holiday?

M Yes. Backpacking is great! I've met some really interesting people.

T How long have you been away?

M I've been away for ten days.

T Have you reached Istanbul?

M No. I'm still in Italy. We've stopped at some interesting places – Rome, Pisa ... I've visited lots of ruins but I haven't bought any souvenirs.

T Have you taken many photos?

M Hundreds. But I haven't put them on my Facebook page. Is there any news from home?

T Yes. My dad has broken his ankle. He's been in hospital since Monday. But the doctors ...

M Oh no! I've used all my credit. Bye!

6C Listening

Check your ticket!

Exercise 1 page 65

(Possible answer) They're on a plane. They're sitting in their seats and taking the meal from the flight attendant. She is offering them their meals. They are saying what kind of meal they want and thanking the flight attendant.

Exercise 2 2.18 page 65

- 2 No, she's handing a meal to the woman. 3 No, he's wearing a white shirt. 4 No, she's wearing a shirt.

- 5 No, it's on a tray. 6 No, we can see a woman in glasses behind the man in the white shirt.

Transcript

- 1 The flight attendant is wearing a blue top.
- 2 She's handing a meal to the man.
- 3 The man next to the flight attendant is wearing a white jacket.
- 4 The woman on the right is wearing a T-shirt.
- 5 The food is in a cardboard box.
- 6 We can see a woman in glasses in front of the man in the white shirt.

Exercise 3 2.19 page 65

Transcript

- 1 The flight attendant is wearing a blue top. No, she's wearing a red top.
- 2 She's handing a meal to the man. No, she's handing a meal to the woman.
- 3 The man next to the flight attendant is wearing a white jacket. No, he's wearing a white shirt.
- 4 The woman on the right is wearing a T-shirt. No, she's wearing a shirt.
- 5 The food is in a cardboard box. No, it's on a tray.
- 6 We can see a woman in glasses in front of the man in the white shirt. No, we can see a woman in glasses behind the man in the white shirt.

Exercise 4 2.20 page 65

Lydia went to Portugal in August. She went by car.

Transcript

See Student's Book, page 65.

Exercise 5 2.20 page 65

Spain; Portugal; August; fly; drove

Transcript

See Student's Book, page 65.

Exercise 6 2.21 page 65

2 b 3 a 4 a 5 a 6 b

Transcript

See Student's Book, page 65.

Exercise 8 2.22 page 65

Georgina wanted to go to Granada in Spain, but the travel agent thought she said Grenada in the Caribbean.

Transcript

Georgina Hepworth finished her lunch and relaxed in her seat with a cup of tea. She was nearly two hours into the flight. She turned to the woman in the seat next to her and said, 'I'm really looking forward to my holiday in Spain.' 'Oh, when are you going to Spain, then?' asked her fellow passenger.

'Well, now, of course!' said Georgina.

The woman gave her a puzzled look. 'Not on this plane, you're not,' she replied.

That's when Georgina found out that her plane wasn't heading for the historic city of Granada in Spain, but for the island of Grenada, in the Caribbean. The Spanish city is 1,500 km south of London. The island, on the other hand, is 7,000 km away on the other side of the Atlantic.

After her husband died earlier in the year, Georgina decided to go on holiday to Spain. She contacted a travel agent and

booked the flight on the phone. When the tickets arrived in the post, she didn't notice that one letter was different in the name of the destination.

'It said "GrEnada", not "GrAnada", but I didn't look very closely,' Georgina later explained. She didn't spot the difference in spelling at the airport, either. 'I noticed that the departure time and the arrival time were very different,' she said, 'but I thought that was because of the time difference between Britain and Spain.'

When she realised her mistake, two hours into the flight, Georgina spoke to the flight attendant. 'I thought the plane was going to Spain, but it's going to the Caribbean!' she said. The flight attendant was very sympathetic, allowed Georgina to sit in a first-class seat, and gave her champagne. But the plane was over the middle of the Atlantic Ocean, and heading west. There was nothing that Georgina could do but wait until the plane landed at its destination.

When the plane finally arrived in the Caribbean, the airline put her in a hotel for the night and then, on the following day, flew her to Granada in Spain.

The travel agent apologised to Georgina and gave her a free ticket for her next holiday. 'It was just a misunderstanding,' said Georgina. 'I don't blame anyone. The travel agent just misheard me. I'm certainly not complaining. They've given me a free holiday in Austria. Let's hope they don't send me a ticket to Australia!'

Exercise 9 2.22 page 65

1 F 2 T 3 F 4 T 5 F

Transcript

See exercise 8.

Exercise 10 page 65

1 Where did you buy your ticket? 2 Where did you want to go? 3 When did you realise your mistake? 4 What happened on the plane? 5 Did you finally go to Granada? 6 Did you get any compensation?

6D Grammar

Contrast: past simple and present perfect

Exercise 1 page 66

(Possible answer) A person skiing has fallen over in the snow. He/She might hurt him/herself.

Exercise 2 2.23 page 66

1 He went last year.
2 On the first day he fell while he was skiing and broke his leg, so he spent the rest of the holiday in hospital.

Transcript

See Student's Book, page 66.

Exercise 3 page 66

Present perfect Have you ever been to Bulgaria? Have you been there? No, I haven't. I've never been skiing ...

Past simple I went there last year with my family. What cities did you visit? We didn't visit any cities. We went skiing. Was it good? I fell and broke my leg on the first day, so I spent ...

Exercise 4 page 66

The present perfect is used to ask and answer questions, and the past simple is used to give specific information.

For further practice of the past simple and present perfect contrast: Grammar Builder 6D page 134

- 6 2 correct 3 I've had this watch since March.
4 correct 5 'I've already tidied it!' 6 We ate at that restaurant last Tuesday. 7 Peter went to the shops on Friday morning. 8 correct 9 'Have you done your homework yet?'
- 7 1a have had 1b had 2a didn't buy 2b haven't bought 3a left 3b have left 4a didn't text 4b hasn't texted 5a have been 5b went
- 8 1 Have ... been 2 went 3 Did ... visit 4 didn't have 5 stayed 6 have never been 7 saw 8 Have ... seen 9 haven't been 10 Was 11 was

Exercise 5 page 66

1 I travelled 2 He's read 3 Have you ever eaten 4 I bought 5 I've forgotten 6 She met

Exercise 6 page 66

1 Have ... been 2 visited 3 was 4 have ... been 5 spent 6 took 7 watched 8 Did ... visit 9 didn't see

Exercise 7 page 66

2 Have you ever lost anything while travelling? 3 Have you ever bought anything online? 4 Have you ever eaten food from another country? 5 Have you ever downloaded music? 6 Have you ever missed a train, bus or plane? 7 Have you ever forgotten to do your homework? 8 Have you ever been abroad?

6E Word Skills

Compounds

Exercise 1 page 67

(Possible answer) The boy is at an airport. He's going through security because all passengers have to go through security.

Exercise 2 page 67

d

Exercise 3 page 67

1 baggage 2 pass 3 cabin 4 lounge 5 flight 6 control 7 security 8 camera

Exercise 4 page 67

in an airport terminal baggage carousel, check-in desk, departure lounge, passport control, security check, security camera, bag drop **on a plane** cabin crew, flight attendant, seat belt, hand luggage, window seat

Exercise 5 2.24 page 67

Transcript

See Student's Book, page 67.

Exercise 6 page 67

1 check-in desk 2 window seat 3 boarding pass 4 passport control 5 security check 6 hand luggage 7 departure lounge 8 flight number

Exercise 7 page 67

first class

Exercise 8 2.25 **page 67**

double room, economy class, full board, low season, part-time

Transcript

See Student's Book, page 67.

Exercise 9 **page 67**

- 1 single room 2 Full board 3 economy class
4 high season 5 part-time 6 online check-in

6F Reading**Holidays without parents****Exercise 2** **page 68**

- 1 C 2 B

Exercise 3 **page 68**

- 1 Kevin 2 Terry 3 Hilary

Exercise 4 **page 69**

1 Hilary says the person rang the doorbell again and again, so she clearly heard it. 2 Kevin hitch-hiked to Cornwall in the south-west of England and then he walked. 3 Kevin says that some strangers were dangerous, not that negotiating with strangers is dangerous. 4 Terry fell asleep with sunglasses on and no sun cream, so he got circles round his eyes. 5 Terry says, 'I didn't want to wait for a bus back to our hotel.'

Exercise 5 **page 69**

- 1 c 2 d 3 c 4 b 5 c

Exercise 7 **page 69**

- 1 programme 2 guide 3 friend 4 pack 5 site
6 cream 7 glasses 8 burn

6G Speaking**Planning a holiday****Exercise 2** **page 70**

places art gallery, church, monument, national park, old town, opera house, park, restaurant, shopping district, square, theatre **events** carnival, concert, festival, musical

Exercise 3 2.27 **page 70**

art gallery, concert, theatre, musical, (restaurant)

Transcript

Examiner So, we're going to London next month. How exciting! Shall we plan our trip?

Candidate Yes, first of all, shall we decide where to stay?

E Yes, let's do that. How much do we want to spend?

C I don't want to spend very much. Why don't we stay in a cheap hotel?

E I'm not sure about that. The beds in cheap hotels are always so uncomfortable!

C OK. This hotel near the station looks good.

E I'm not sure. It might be quite noisy. What about staying in this hotel, near the centre?

C I don't mind. You choose. Now, what tourist attractions do you want to see? It would be nice to visit an art gallery.

E Yes, I like that idea. Do you fancy going to a concert, too?

C I'm not very keen on that idea. I'd rather go to the theatre, actually.

E OK. Why not? There are lots of good shows to choose from.

C What about places to eat? What kind of food do you like?

E I love fish and chips. Do you fancy getting some fish and chips on the first evening?

C What a good idea! I like Italian food, too, so we can find a pizzeria on another evening.

E Yes. Now, what's the best way to travel round London?

C We could always get a Travelcard. You can travel as often as you like on buses and the underground with a Travelcard.

E That's a really good plan. How much is a Travelcard?

C I think it's about £10 a day.

E OK, I'll get two of those for us.

Exercise 4 **page 70**

- 1 c 2 c 3 a 4 c 5 a 6 b 7 c

Exercise 5 **page 70**

- 1 sounds 2 good 3 like 4 really 5 not 6 that
7 sure 8 think 9 keen 10 rather 11 mind
12 suggestion 13 both

Exercise 6 2.27 **page 70**

Shall we ...? Let's do that. Why don't we ...? I'm not sure about that. What about ...? I don't mind. It would be nice ... I like that idea. Do you fancy ...? I'm not very keen on that idea. Why not? What about ...? (Do you fancy ...?) What a good idea! We could always ... That's a really good plan.

Transcript

See exercise 3.

For further practice of city tourism:**Vocabulary Builder 6G** **page 120**

- 1 **A** fish and chip shop, food van, restaurant, sandwich bar, tea room **B** boat trip, day trip, excursion, walking tour **C** route, timetable, travel pass, travel zone
2 1 travel pass 2 timetable 3 food van
4 open-top bus tour 5 bus fare 6 travel zones
7 fish and chip shop 8 walking tour 9 boat trip

Exercise 8 2.28 **page 70**

She asks twice. She didn't understand 'market' and 'pricey'.

Transcript

Candidate I'm really looking forward to our trip to London. Shall we book a hotel?

Examiner OK. Or maybe a hostel. They are much cheaper.

C I like that idea. We can find one online.

E OK. What kind of tourist attractions would you like to visit?

C Well, I'd like to see Buckingham Palace and the Houses of Parliament. And I'd like to go shopping, too.

E Me, too. We could go to one of the markets.

C Sorry, did you say 'supermarket'?

E No, 'market'. For example, Covent Garden or Camden.

C Cool. It would be nice to visit a park, too. Do you know if there are any good parks in London?

E Yes, Hyde Park and Regents Park are very beautiful.

C Pardon?

E Hyde Park and Regents Park. They're right in the centre. They are very beautiful.

C What about restaurants? I suppose there are lots of good restaurants in the centre.

E Yes, but lots of them are very pricey.

- C Sorry, what does 'pricey' mean?
 E Expensive.
 C Oh, I see. Well, we can find cheap ones, I'm sure. How are we going to travel around in London?
 E We can walk if we want to save money.
 C I don't like that idea. It'll be too tiring.
 E Well, let's take buses, then. Maybe we can hire bicycles, too.
 C I'd rather not. Cycling in cities can be quite dangerous.
 E OK, let's use the buses, then. Or should we use the underground? It's quicker than the bus.
 C I don't mind. They're both good ideas.
 E OK. Let's use the underground. I'm looking forward to this holiday!

6H Writing

A holiday blog

Exercise 2 page 71

Harry has done four things and has two more planned.
 Emily has done two things and has one more planned.

Exercise 3 page 71

No: the first post doesn't mention where Harry is staying.

Exercise 4 page 71

Hilarious! Still cloudy ... Can't wait! Will post another entry tomorrow ... Arrived in Snowdonia two days ago ... Really looking forward to it!

Exercise 5 page 71

1 (Have) finally arrived! 2 Looking forward to seeing you again. 3 Went up the Empire State Building yesterday. 4 Visited the Musée d'Orsay on Friday. 5 Flying back tomorrow.

Exercise 6 page 71

1 windy, rainy, cloudy, sunny, dry 2 river, hills, waterfall, lake, cliff 3 kayaking, abseiling, mountain biking

Exercise 7 page 71

1 shopping; kayaking; abseiling; mountain biking
 2 boat trip 3 tower 4 cathedral 5 bike 6 souvenirs

For further practice of holiday activities:

Vocabulary Builder 6H page 120

3 1 visit 2 go 3 go 4 hire 5 play 6 lie
 7 eat 8 buy

Exam Skills Trainer 3

Reading

Exercise 1 page 72

1 I 2 he or she 3 I 4 it 5 I 6 I 7 I

Exercise 2 page 72

1 G 2 D 3 I 4 H 5 F 6 C 7 B

Listening

Exercise 3 page 72

- A experience; family
 B fun; abroad
 C all the information; advance
 D avoid problems; work
 E learn to work; yourself
 F different ways; perform

Exercise 4 2.29 page 72

1 B 2 E 3 F 4 C 5 A

Transcript

- Do you enjoy adventure? Have you ever been white water rafting, or canoeing on a river? If the answer is 'yes', then you're the kind of person we are looking for to work on our summer camps. We have summer activity camps in the south of France in July and August this year. Experience of working with young people is preferred. All our staff have one day off a week, and the opportunity for travel at the end of August. Please see our website for more details.
- I'm a creative person and I enjoy making things. I'm good at selling things, too. At the moment, I'm making silver jewellery and selling it on the internet. When I leave school, I'd like to study business and finance at university. Then I'll work for a company for a couple of years before I set up my own business. I'm really interested in business, so I'm sure I'll be successful.
- I've always wanted to be an actor. When I was at school, I was in the drama club and I performed in all the school plays. I was also in a drama club outside school on Saturdays. I learned a lot of skills there. We did acting, of course, but also singing and dancing. I got my first part in the theatre when I was ten – in *Charlie and the Chocolate Factory*. Then I did some adverts on TV, and then some children's TV.
- Many people are nervous about interviews, but there are a lot of things that you can do to prepare. For example, it helps to find out all you can about the people you want to work for. This shows you are interested in them. Choose smart but comfortable clothes, so you look good but also feel relaxed. Plan your route to the interview, too – you don't want to get lost! Finally, arrive at your interview early. You can wait in a café until it's time to go in.
- My dad got a job as a chef in a restaurant in Paris a few years ago. He rented an apartment there and we stayed at home in London. In the holidays we visited him and I helped out in the kitchen. It was really good earning a bit of money, but my dad didn't like living away from us so he came back to England and opened his own restaurant. I'm too busy now to work there.

Use of English

Exercise 5 page 72

1 as 2 for 3 the 4 what 5 that 6 before
 7 about 8 who 9 as 10 to

Writing

Exercise 9 page 73

1 so 2 so that 3 that 4 as 5 in order to
 6 because of

Map of resources**7A Vocabulary**

Student's Book, pages 74–75; Workbook, page 74

Photocopiable: 7A (Spending power)

7B Grammar

Student's Book, page 76; Workbook, page 75

Photocopiable: 7B (Second conditional)

7C Listening

Student's Book, page 77; Workbook, page 76

7D Grammar

Student's Book, page 78; Workbook, page 77

Photocopiable: 7D (Past perfect)

7E Word Skills

Student's Book, page 79; Workbook, page 78

7F Reading

Student's Book, pages 80–81; Workbook, page 79

7G Speaking

Student's Book, page 82; Workbook, page 80

7H Writing

Student's Book, page 83; Workbook, page 81

Culture 7

Student's Book, page 114

DVD and DVD worksheet: Unit 7

Classroom Presentation Tool Unit 7**End of unit**

Unit Review: Workbook, pages 82–83

Photocopiable: Grammar Review

Photocopiable: Vocabulary Review

Exam Skills Trainer 4: Workbook, pages 84–85

Cumulative Review 1–7: Workbook, pages 114–115

Progress Test and Short Tests: Unit 7

7A Vocabulary**Spending power****Exercise 3** 2.30 page 74

- 1 £10,000 2 £3,500 3 £6,850 4 £12,000 5 £5,400
6 £500

Transcript

- 1 This cheese, called 'Pule cheese', comes from Serbia and it costs nearly a thousand euros a kilo. That's about £800. It takes 25 litres of milk to make just one kilo of the cheese – and it isn't cow's milk. The milk for this cheese comes from a rare breed of donkey.

- 2 This pair of melons cost over two million yen at an auction in Japan. That's £12,000! Fruit is a popular gift in Japan to say thank you to a friend or to your boss at work. Melons need to be perfectly round and exactly the right colour. Perfect apples and strawberries are also popular gifts – but these 'Yubari King melons' are the most expensive.
- 3 This pen, called the Mont Blanc Lorenzo di Medici fountain pen, costs £6,850. It's made of sterling silver and is engraved by hand.
- 4 How much is one flower worth? If it's this particular flower, the Gold of Kinabalu Orchid, then it's worth £3,500! Why? Because you can only find it in one place in the world – a park in Malaysia. The flower only grows between the months of April and May, and for long periods – many years, sometimes – it does not appear at all.
- 5 These are Nike trainers dipped in real gold! They were created by the designer 'Ju\$T Another Rich Kid'. He created five pairs of these Nike Air Dunks for \$5,400 each. The New York based artist – real name Ken Courtney – created the glitzy shoes as part of a collection called 'Indulgences (for the man who has everything)'.
- 6 How much do you usually pay for a haircut? If you're in New York City and want Orlando Pita to do it, you'll need to pay about \$800. That's £500. Is it worth it? Well, ask Madonna, or Gwyneth Paltrow, or Anne Hathaway. They all go to Orlando Pita when they need a haircut.

Exercise 4 2.31 page 74

- 1 deli 2 florist's 3 stationer's 4 greengrocer's
5 shoe shop 6 hairdresser's

Transcript

- 1 You can buy cheese at a deli.
2 You can buy melons at a greengrocer's.
3 You can buy a pen at a stationer's.
4 You can buy a flower at a florist's.
5 You can buy trainers at a shoe shop.
6 You can get a haircut at a hairdresser's.

Exercise 5 2.32 page 75

baker's bank butcher's charity shop chemist's
coffee shop clothes shop cosmetics store
deli (delicatessen) DIY store estate agent's florist's
garden centre greengrocer's hairdresser's jeweller's
launderette newsagent's optician's
post office shoe shop stationer's takeaway
The stress is usually near the beginning.

Transcript

See answer key.

Exercise 6 2.33 page 75

- 2 newsagent's 3 clothes shop 4 jeweller's 5 florist's
6 post office

Transcript

- 1 Shop assistant** Can I help you?
Customer Yes. I'd like to buy two litres of white paint, please. Oh, and some paintbrushes.
SA Sure.
C Can I use this coupon?
SA I'm not sure. Can I see it? Oh, I'm sorry. It's too old.
C Really?
SA Yes. Look at this date. Use before 31 August 2009.
C Wow! I've had that a long time.
- 2 Customer** Hi. I'm looking for a magazine. It's called *Great Train Journeys*. Have you got it?
Shop assistant Sure.
C How much is it?
SA It's £1.95.
C Really? That's very cheap!
SA Yes. It's on special offer this month. The normal price is £6.95.
C Oh, OK.
- 3 Shop assistant** Hello. Can I help you?
Customer Yes. How much are these jeans, please?
SA I'm not sure. Is there a price tag?
C I can't see one.
SA It's usually here, near the top. Yes, there it is.
C £85? Sorry, they're far too expensive for me!
SA Well, we've got some cheaper pairs over there.
C Thanks.
- 4 Shop assistant** Can I help you?
Customer Yes. I'm interested in the diamond ring that's in your window.
SA The one with the large diamond in the centre?
C Yes, that's right. Is it £2,500?
SA Yes. It's a bargain, isn't it?
C I don't know. That seems rather expensive ...
SA I realise it's a lot of money. But believe me, it's a big diamond for that price.
- 5 Shop assistant** Hi. Are you just looking?
Customer No. I need some flowers for my aunt.
SA Is it her birthday?
C No, I'm going to see her in hospital.
SA Well, these roses are four pounds each. But if you buy twelve, I can give you a discount. You can have them for £35.
C Great! I'll take them.
SA Wonderful. And I hope your aunt gets better soon.
C Oh, she's fine. She's having a baby!
- 6 Customer** Hi. I need to send this package to Brazil.
Shop assistant OK. Can you put it on there, please? I need to weigh it.
C Where? Oh, right. OK.
SA Thanks. So that will be ... £12.
C Yes, that's fine. Can I have a receipt?
SA Yes, of course. Just one moment.

Exercise 7 page 75

- 1 special offer 2 bargain 3 price tag 4 sale
 5 discount 6 coupons 7 refund 8 receipt
 9 discount code

Exercise 8 2.33 page 75

- Dialogue 1 – DIY store – coupon
 Dialogue 2 – newsagent's – special offer
 Dialogue 3 – clothes shop – price tag

- Dialogue 4 – jeweller's – bargain
 Dialogue 5 – florist's – discount
 Dialogue 6 – post office – receipt

Transcript

See exercise 6.

Exercise 9 page 75

- 1 Have you ever asked 2 Have you ever used
 3 Have you ever compared 4 Have you ever waited
 5 Have you ever seen

7B Grammar

Second conditional

Exercise 2 2.34 page 76

Transcript

See Student's Book, page 76.

Exercise 3 page 76

- 1 past simple 2 would 3 infinitive
 The world would be much better if money didn't exist.
 If money didn't exist, how would you buy things?
 If you needed something, you would make it.
 If you couldn't make it, you would swap with somebody else.
 So if I wanted a new mobile phone, how would I get it?
 If money didn't exist, life wouldn't be better for poor people.
 If nobody had any money, everybody would be equal.

For further practice of the second conditional:

Grammar Builder 7B page 136

- 1 1 c 2 e 3 a 4 b 5 d
 2 1 would do; spent 2 didn't watch; would be 3 hit; would cause 4 would slow; changed
 5 applied; would get 6 visited; could 7 wanted; would start
 3 2 If she liked swimming, she would go to the pool. / She would go to the pool if she liked swimming.
 3 If he earned a lot of money, he would rent an apartment on his own. / He would rent an apartment on his own if he earned a lot of money.
 4 If the Louvre Museum wasn't/weren't crowded, I would like it. / I would like the Louvre Museum if it wasn't/weren't crowded.
 5 We would go on holiday this year if we could afford it. / If we could afford it, we would go on holiday this year.
 6 If I understood my homework, I could finish it quickly. / I could finish my homework quickly if I understood it.
 4 1 would you do; were 2 could; would you choose
 3 Would you behave; weren't 4 would you feel; won
 5 could; would you go 6 had to; would you take

Exercise 4 page 76

- 1 d If I needed money, I would get a holiday job.
 2 a If tablet computers didn't cost so much, I would ask my dad to buy one for me.
 3 f I would be upset if the coffee shop in my village closed.

- 4 c I could buy clothes really cheaply if I shopped at the charity shop.
 5 b If I had a credit card, I could shop online.
 6 e If I didn't have a mobile phone, I would use my mum's laptop to send messages.

Exercise 5 page 76

- 1 would save 2 made 3 swapped 4 would get
 5 sold 6 could

7C Listening

Honesty pays

Exercise 2 2.35 page 77

He found a lot of money in a shopping centre, but although he was homeless, he handed it in to the police.

Transcript

Glen James didn't expect to get a reward for what he did. He thought he was just doing the right thing. But because of his honesty, this poor, homeless man from Boston now has enough money to live comfortably.

Last February, James, who has been homeless for five years, was in a shopping centre when he noticed a bag on the floor. Nobody was near it. He picked it up and looked inside. He couldn't believe his eyes. There was \$42,000 in cash and traveller's cheques in the bag. James didn't think for one moment of keeping the money. He left the shopping centre and stopped a police car that was passing, and handed the bag to them. The bag also contained passports and tickets and the police soon found the owner of the bag, a Chinese student who was visiting Boston.

When Ethan Whittington, a manager at an advertising agency, heard the story on the news, he decided to help James. He wanted to make life better for him.

Twenty-six-year-old Whittington set up a website where people could donate money to James. He hoped to raise \$50,000 but soon there was over \$100,000.

James is surprised and delighted at receiving the money. 'I was only doing the right thing,' he says. 'Now I'll have enough money to open a bank account!'

Exercise 3 page 77

- 1 verb 2 place 3 noun 4 people 5 person
 6 noun 7 number

Exercise 4 2.35 page 77

- 1 has been homeless 2 a shopping centre
 3 money 4 to the police 5 Chinese student
 6 website 7 over \$100,000

Transcript

See exercise 2.

Exercise 6 page 77

borrow – lend; buy – sell; get a refund – give a refund;
 save – spend

Exercise 8 2.36 page 77

- 1 in a clothes store
 2 other people, like her family and friends
 3 by (credit) card 4 £6 a week
 5 a week after she bought it

Transcript

- I was in town last week looking for a present for my friend Amy. I looked in loads of shops but I couldn't find anything. Finally I went into a clothes store. It's not a good idea to buy clothes for people unless you know them really well, but I found a nice scarf. Amy is quite fussy but hopefully she'll like it. I'll keep the receipt in case she wants to take it back. Anyway, I was about to pay for it, when I dropped some coins on the floor. And as I picked them up I noticed a £10 note on the floor. I handed it to the shop assistant and she said she'd keep it in case anyone came back for it.
- I'm always short of money. I don't get much pocket money and I seem to spend it as fast as I get it. I don't think I waste money on things I don't need. In fact I prefer to spend money on other people, like my family and friends. Anyway, I ran out of money last week and I really need some for a cinema ticket. My friend Sam offered to lend me some money, but I already owe him money so I asked my sister, Leia. She said she was short of money herself so she said no. I guess I'll have to borrow from Sam again.
- I bought a baseball cap yesterday. But as I was leaving the check-out I noticed that the shop assistant had overcharged me. I was paying by card and I didn't check the amount before I entered my PIN. Anyway, I'm sure the price ticket on the shelf was £10, but she charged me £15. I complained and tried to get my money back. She refused. I said, 'You have to sell things for the price that is marked on the shelf.' She said I was wrong and I got a bit cross, but it didn't help. She said, 'You can have all the money back but I can't give it to you for £10.' I bought it anyway, but I'm glad I did. Although it's quite expensive, it's a brilliant cap.
- It's always a mistake to buy things in a sale. OK, so everything is much cheaper, but I always ask myself, 'Would you buy it if it was full price?' If the answer is 'No, probably not,' then I don't buy it in the sale. In fact, I prefer to buy really good quality clothes and I don't mind paying a bit more for them. There's a lovely leather jacket that I want but it costs so much! I only get £6 a week from my parents so I'll have to wait a while before I can afford it. I'm sure Dad would lend me the money if I asked him, but I'd rather not.
- Last month I borrowed some money from my parents to buy a necklace. I don't normally spend a lot of money on myself, and I don't normally borrow money, either. But I fell in love with this necklace, although it cost far more than I normally spend on jewellery. Even my mum thought it was expensive. She said, 'Why don't you save up for it?' and tried to persuade me not to buy it. But I didn't listen. I bought it anyway. A week after I bought it, I decided I didn't like it after all so I decided to return it to the shop. But I couldn't find the receipt. The sales assistant refused to give me a refund or to exchange it, which is fair enough. I've wasted a lot of money, and I owe my mum £60!

Exercise 9 2.36 page 77

- 1 E 2 A 3 B 4 F 5 C

Transcript

See exercise 8.

Exercise 10 page 77

- 2 borrow 3 lent 4 saving 5 bought 6 charged
 7 spend 8 cost 9 sold

7D Grammar

Past perfect

Exercise 1 page 78

Howell's hard drive is in an enormous rubbish dump.
It is worth \$7.5 million.
No, he didn't find it.

Exercise 2 page 78

had thrown ... away; had risen; had increased; had taken ... apart; had spilled; had kept; had sold; had ... forgotten; hadn't saved
1 had 2 hadn't

Exercise 3 page 78

- 1 Howell threw the computer away and then forgot about the bitcoins.
- 2 Howell had forgotten about the bitcoins before he threw the computer away.

For further practice of the past perfect

Grammar Builder 7D page 136

- 6 1 had eaten 2 had forgotten 3 had grown
4 had missed 5 had written; had made 6 had seen
- 7 1 couldn't; had left 2 ate; had never eaten
3 found; had lost 4 met; had been born
5 didn't play; had hurt 6 was; had rained
- 8 2 After we'd bought a newspaper, we had a coffee.
3 After we'd played tennis, we went home.
4 When my cousin phoned, I'd gone to sleep.
5 When we arrived at the match, Messi had scored two goals.
6 When their mother got home, the children had done the housework.

Exercise 4 page 78

- 1 left; had forgotten 2 had ... bought
3 had ... closed 4 hadn't been 5 had gone

Exercise 5 page 78

- 2 After I'd been to the cosmetics store, I went to the hairdresser's.
- 3 After I'd paid for the flowers, I left the shop.
- 4 After Jim had done some shopping, he caught the bus home.
- 5 After my dad had left university, he became a teacher.
- 6 After the chemist's had closed down, a charity shop opened in the same building.

Exercise 6 page 78

- 1 had won the lottery 2 had bought his ticket
3 hadn't checked the numbers 4 had lost his ticket
5 had taken the lottery company 6 had lost

7E Word Skills

Verb + infinitive or -ing form

Exercise 1 page 79

(Possible answer) She is checking a price on the internet.

Exercise 2 page 79

- 1 'Showrooming' is when people visit a shop, examine a product, and then buy it online.

Exercise 3 page 79

infinitive decide, pretend, refuse, fail, prefer, expect, choose
-ing form keep, spend (time), can't stand, avoid, end up, risk

Exercise 4 page 79

- 1 a refuse b avoid c hate
2 a hate b avoid, refuse

Exercise 5 page 79

infinitive agree, offer, promise
-ing form admit, enjoy, mind

Exercise 6 page 79

- 1 to phone 2 stealing 3 shopping; to shop
4 to order; queueing 5 eating out 6 to give
7 to pay 8 going

7F Reading

Aaron Levie

Exercise 2 page 80

Aaron Levie runs an IT company. 'Box' is a good name because the company offers a way of storing data.

Exercise 3 page 80

- 1 contrast 2 similarity 3 cause / result 4 contrast
5 a different option

Exercise 4 page 80

- 1 F 2 D 3 A 4 E 5 C

Exercise 5 2.37 page 80

Transcript

See Student's Book, page 80.

Exercise 6 page 80

- 1 F 2 T 3 T 4 T 5 T

Exercise 7 page 80

- 1 income / salary 2 salary 3 entrepreneur 4 funding
5 profits 6 CEO 7 contracts 8 investors

7G Speaking

Photo comparison and presentation

Exercise 1 page 82

1 hall 8 playing field

For further practice of school vocabulary:

Vocabulary Builder 7G page 120

1 1 corridor 2 head teacher's office 3 stairs
4 gym 5 science lab

Exercise 6 2.38 page 82

Transcript

1 I'd like to start by saying that I don't believe schools spend enough money on any of these things. The reason I say that is that very few students in our school play musical instruments, and not many do sport either, except PE, which is a lesson. Not only that, we hardly ever go on school trips, perhaps just once a year.

Now, let's move on to the question of which of the three schools should spend the most money on. If I have to choose just one, I'd say that we should spend the most on music. I'll tell you why I think that. First, there are lots of opportunities for students to do sport outside school. In my town, for example, there's a sports centre where we can swim, go to the gym, play squash, basketball, football and so on. Second, students often go on trips and holidays with their parents. So there's no need for the school to spend money on school trips. Finally, and most importantly, very few people have musical instruments at home, and not many parents play musical instruments themselves. So without encouragement and help from the school, most students will miss out on music.

To sum up, I believe that schools should spend money on all these things, but music is the most important.

2 First of all, we need to ask ourselves if schools should spend money on music, sport and school trips at all. In my opinion, they should use the money for things like books and computers. However, let's look at which of the three deserves the most money. As I see it, sport is the most important. There are a number of reasons why I believe this. First, many teenagers nowadays are unfit. They need to do more sport at school. Second, music isn't very important. Most people just prefer to listen to music. Very few actually want to play musical instruments. And if they do, they can teach themselves guitar at home. Finally, although school trips are fun and help students to relax and make friends, sport is even better for doing these things.

All in all, I take the view that schools should spend more on sport than on music or school trips.

Exercise 7 2.38 page 82

I'd like to start by saying ...

The reason I say that is ...

Now let's move on to (the question of) ...

I'll tell you why I think that.

First, ... Second, ... Finally, ...

To sum up, ...

First of all, we need to ask ourselves ...

There are a number of reasons why I believe this.

All in all, ...

Transcript

See exercise 6.

7H Writing

An opinion essay

Exercise 3 page 83

1 five 2 5 3 2 4 3 & 4 5 1

Exercise 4 page 83

(Possible answers)

1 As I see it

2 Furthermore

3 If I had €1 million, it would be easy to find three good ways to use the money. If he had a new bike, he wouldn't do that.

4 They could probably start building immediately if I gave them half a million euros. The teachers would find it far easier to teach sports and PE if they had new equipment.

5 He borrows mine all the time, even though he's got one, because mine is better.

For further practice of money prepositions:

Vocabulary Builder 7H page 120

3 1 on 2 for 3 to 4 for 5 in 6 off 7 for
8 from 9 on 10 to 11 for

Map of resources

8A Vocabulary

Student's Book, pages 84–85; Workbook, page 86

Photocopiable: 8A (Crimes and criminals)

8B Grammar

Student's Book, page 86; Workbook, page 87

Photocopiable: 8B (Reported speech 1)

8C Listening

Student's Book, page 87; Workbook, page 88

8D Grammar

Student's Book, page 88; Workbook, page 89

Photocopiable: 8D (Reported speech 2)

8E Word Skills

Student's Book, page 89; Workbook, page 90

8F Reading

Student's Book, pages 90–91; Workbook, page 91

8G Speaking

Student's Book, page 92; Workbook, page 92

8H Writing

Student's Book, page 93; Workbook, page 93

Culture 8

Student's Book, page 115

DVD and DVD worksheet: Unit 8

Classroom Presentation Tool Unit 8

End of unit

Unit Review: Workbook, pages 94–95

Photocopiable: Grammar Review

Photocopiable: Vocabulary Review

Exam Skills Trainer 4: Student's Book, pages 94–95

Progress Test and Short Tests: Unit 8

8A Vocabulary

Crimes and criminals

Exercise 1 page 84

1 Catwoman 2 Robin Hood 3 the lead characters in the film *Ocean's Eleven*, including Danny Ocean
All the characters are involved in theft.

Exercise 2 2.39 page 84

1 arsonist 2 burglary 3 burglar 4 break 5 sell
6 steal 7 mugging 8 mugger 9 murder
10 murderer 11 kill 12 steal 13 theft 14 thief
15 damage

Transcript

See Student's Book, page 84.

Exercise 3 page 85

(Possible answers)

- A The woman is in a shop. She is shoplifting some sunglasses.
B The thief is in the street or in a jeweller's shop. He/She is stealing a necklace.
C The burglar is outside a house. He is breaking into it/trying to burgle it.
D The man is in the street. He is vandalising a car.

Exercise 4 2.40 page 85

1 C 2 B 3 D

Transcript

- Police have launched an investigation into burglaries at homes in the town centre. They believe that one or two burglars are responsible for all of the crimes. According to a police spokesman, they have searched a house near the park and interviewed a suspect. They have not made any arrests but believe they are close to solving the crime. Meanwhile, they have asked home-owners to take extra care with security, and to lock doors and windows when they go out.
- Thieves have broken into a jeweller's in the town centre and escaped with watches and bracelets worth half a million pounds. The crime took place last night, just after midnight, in the West Green Shopping Centre, where there are also a number of bars and restaurants. The police have appealed for witnesses, as they believe several members of the public were in the shopping centre when the crime took place. They are also studying CCTV footage for clues.
- People in Park Hill are unhappy about vandalism in their part of town. According to Jeff Burton, who runs a hairdresser's, the problem has got worse in recent months. Vandals have broken his shop window five times in a month, he claims. They have also smashed car windows, and damaged bus stops and phone boxes. Police say they are close to identifying the culprits and expect to make several arrests over the next few days. They have also promised to patrol the area at night to prevent future crimes.

Exercise 6 2.40 page 85

1 launch 2 search 3 interview 4 make 5 appeal
6 study 7 identify 8 patrol

Transcript

See exercise 4.

Exercise 7 page 85

2 more serious 3 worse 4 the most difficult
5 more frightening

8B Grammar

Reported speech (1)

Exercise 2 page 86

Most listeners thought that the crime was a joke because the reporter was interviewing the man / mugger about street crime.

Exercise 3  2.41 page 86

- 1 'm doing 2 is 3 saw 4 aren't
5 don't want 6 stole

- 1 He stopped a passer-by and said that he was doing a story on street crime in the area.
2 The man said there was a lot of crime there.
3 He said he had seen a mugging earlier that day.
4 The reporter then said there weren't many police officers on the streets.
5 The man said he didn't want more police around.
6 The reporter, sounding upset, said that the man had stolen his phone.

Transcript

See Student's Book, page 86.

Exercise 4 page 86

- 1 past simple 2 past continuous 3 past perfect

For further practice of reported speech:**Grammar Builder 8B** page 138

- 1 1 was wearing 2 hadn't arrived 3 wasn't
4 was snowing 5 wasn't enjoying 6 made
7 didn't like 8 had been 9 knew
10 hadn't taken
- 2 2 he; my 3 he, their 4 my; her; their 5 his; he; his
- 3 (Possible answers)
2 She said (that) it was raining quite hard there.
3 She said (that) she needed to buy a present for her sister.
4 She said (that) it was her (sister's) birthday soon.
5 She said (that) she was looking for a silver bracelet.
6 She said (that) she had seen a nice one the day before in the jeweller's.
7 She said (that) that unfortunately it wasn't there any more.
8 She said (that) she thought somebody had bought it.

Exercise 6 page 86

- 2 She said (that) two men were burgling the house next door.
3 He said (that) teenagers often vandalised his shop.
4 She said (that) she had found the money two days earlier.
5 The police said (that) they were launching an investigation into drug-dealing in the town centre.
6 The teacher said (that) the police had arrested two suspects the Friday before.
7 He said (that) crime was getting worse, in his opinion.
8 She said (that) muggers often attacked tourists.

8C Listening**A life of crime****Exercise 1** page 87

Bonnie and Clyde were both American. They were shot and killed by the police on 23 May 1934. Clyde was wanted for murder, robbery and kidnapping.

Butch Cassidy (1866–1908) was an American train robber, bank robber and leader of a gang in the American Old West.

Billy the Kid (1859–1881) was an Irish-American gunman who became an outlaw in the American West. According to legend, he killed 21 men.

Exercise 2 page 87

(Possible answers)

- b arsonists
c broke into, valuable jewellery
d looked for, criminals
e mugged the youth

Exercise 3  3.02 page 87

- a 5 b 1 c 2 d 4 e 3

Transcript

- 1 The police arrested the arsonists.
2 They broke into the house and stole some valuable jewellery.
3 They mugged the youth and stole his wallet and phone.
4 They looked for the criminals.
5 The police arrested the suspect.

Exercise 4  3.03 page 87

- 1 12
2 Clyde was 25; Bonnie was 23.

Transcript

Host Today on Good Reads I'm pleased to welcome Christina Rayworth, who has written a new biography of Bonnie and Clyde. So, Christina, tell us a bit about their backgrounds.

Christina Bonnie Parker was born in Texas in 1910. She was short and good-looking, a bright student, but she got bored, left school and got married at the age of sixteen. However, the marriage wasn't happy and didn't last long.

Clyde was a year older than Bonnie. His parents were farmers, but they didn't own the farm and they were always short of money. His dad finally gave up farming and opened a petrol station in Dallas. Clyde had a job but also started shoplifting and stealing cars.

H So, when did the two meet?

C In 1930. They fell in love immediately. But the police arrested Clyde a few weeks later and he went to prison for two years. In 1932, when he came out of prison, in the middle of the Great Depression, there were huge numbers of people looking for work, and very few jobs. Unable to find work, the young couple joined a gang and started a career of crime.

H But they hadn't killed anybody yet, had they?

C No, but it wasn't long before Clyde shot the owner of a shop while they were robbing it. It was the first of thirteen murders.

H So they continued to rob and steal?

C Yes, they robbed shops and banks across the southern states. They often changed cars – by stealing a new one! Clyde was a good driver and knew the roads very well, so it was difficult for the police to catch them.

H What finally happened to them?

C They had already killed a number of police officers so the police were determined to capture or kill the couple. Bonnie and Clyde frequently visited their families. The police knew this and set a trap. They waited for Bonnie and Clyde to pass in their car and then started shooting. The police fired 130 bullets at the car, killing the couple. Clyde was 25, Bonnie was just 23.

H Why do Bonnie and Clyde continue to fascinate us?

C Well, we like to romanticise them. They were young, they were in love and they were always on the road, never settling down. Bonnie wrote poems and Clyde played the saxophone. That appeals to a lot of people, too. And I guess people think of all outlaws as on the side of the ordinary people, and against authority. But the reality was very different, of course.

H Thanks, Christina, for talking to us.

Exercise 5 3.03 page 87

1 a 2 both 3 b 4 both 5 a

Exercise 6 page 87

- 2 His family were farmers, but they didn't own the farm and they were always short of money.
- 3 There were huge numbers of people looking for work, and very few jobs.
- 4 They often changed cars – by stealing a new one! They frequently visited their families.
- 5 They were always on the road, never settling down.

8D Grammar

Reported speech (2)

Exercise 1 page 88

He got stuck in a bathroom window. He got out when firefighters removed the window.

Exercise 2 page 88

a 4 b 3 c 2 d 1 e 5

Exercise 3 page 88

1 past perfect 2 could / couldn't 3 would / wouldn't

For further practice of reported speech: Grammar Builder 8D page 138

- 4 1 had broken 2 would carry 3 had lost
4 could get 5 had ... been 6 couldn't
7 hadn't locked 8 would win
- 5 2 Emma said (that) they hadn't been to London since last January. 3 Wendy said (that) Tom couldn't speak French. 4 Kylie said (that) she would get a holiday job next summer. 5 Jake said (that) we could play tennis the next day. 6 Kate's brother said (that) she had decided to study medicine. 7 Andy said (that) he wouldn't tell anyone what Josh had done.

Exercise 4 page 88

- 2 Cathy said (that) she had never been jet-skiing.
- 3 Liam said (that) he would watch the documentary with me that night.
- 4 George said (that) we/they couldn't go out because it was stormy.
- 5 Harriet said (that) the volcano had erupted twice that year.
- 6 Chris said (that) he would probably study maths at college.
- 7 Joe said (that) we/they could visit the aquarium that day.
- 8 Mandy said (that) a new florist's had opened in town.

Exercise 5 page 88

say He said he couldn't move. She said to the man that he could stay where he was ...

tell The man told Miss Holmes that he had been there for four hours. Miss Holmes told the man that she wouldn't help him because he had tried to burgle her house.

For further practice of reported speech:

Grammar Builder 8D page 138

6 1 told 2 said 3 said 4 told 5 said 6 told

Exercise 6 page 88

1 told 2 said 3 said 4 told 5 said 6 told

8E Word Skills

Adjective suffixes

Exercise 2 page 89

The text is about a bank robbery.

Exercise 3 page 89

1 hopeful 2 careless 3 foolish 4 reliable
5 lucky 6 weekly 7 mysterious 8 national

Exercise 4 page 89

affordable, cowardly, furious, painful / painless, peaceful, selfish / selfless

Exercise 5 page 89

2 peaceful 3 selfish 4 affordable 5 cowardly
6 furious

8F Reading

An Australian murder mystery

Exercise 2 page 90

The words 'tamám shud' were on a small piece of paper in a secret pocket inside the dead man's trousers.

Exercise 4 page 90

1 a 2 b 3 c 4 b 5 d

Exercise 5 page 90

1 matches 2 comb 3 brush 4 knife 5 wallet
6 scissors

Exercise 6 page 90

1 investigation 2 ticket 3 gum 4 prints
5 records 6 car 7 number 8 code
'Fingerprints' is written as a single word.

Exercise 7 page 90

(When the nurse saw the body, she said she) did not know him, but she seemed to recognize him and looked scared.

8G Speaking

Photo description

Exercise 1 page 92

(Possible answers)

- 1 They can't want people to recognise them because they are wearing hoodies and one of them is covering his face.
- 2 It must be clothes because one of the looters is holding a pair of jeans.
- 3 It must be happening during the day because it's light.

Exercise 2 3.05 page 92

Transcript

The photo shows a number of men looting a shop. There must be a riot in this area, because the shutter looks broken. They can't want people to recognise them, because most of them are wearing hoodies and one of them is covering his face. The man in the foreground is holding up a pair of jeans. Presumably, he's stolen them from the shop because the label is still on them. It must be a clothes shop. The man on the right can't be one of the looters because he isn't wearing the same clothes and he is just standing there. He probably doesn't want to stop them because he is scared. The man at the back with the stripy hoodie looks like he is trying to climb in. He's probably going to steal something. If I lived in this place, I'd feel really frightened because there's no law and order. Anything could happen.

For further practice of describing people:

Vocabulary Builder 8G page 121

- 1 **A** a beard, curly / straight / wavy hair, eyebrows; a moustache, plaits, a ponytail
B earrings, a necklace, sunglasses, a scarf
- 2 (Possible answers)
The man has got a beard and a moustache. He's got straight dark hair. He's wearing sunglasses, a hat, a scarf and a jacket.
The woman has got long, straight white and pink hair. She's got plaits and she's wearing earrings. She's also wearing a white top and a waistcoat.

Exercise 4 3.06 page 92

Transcript

The first photo shows a man snatching a bag from a woman while she's walking through a subway. She's trying to hold onto the bag so he can't steal it. In the second photo, a man is leaning into a car through a broken window. He's also trying to steal a lady's bag.

The common theme in the photos is crime. You can see the criminal in both photos. But, unlike the first photo, the second photo does not show the victim. That's because the owner of the car is probably not there.

Another obvious difference is that the criminal in the first photo might not succeed. The woman might hold onto her bag. But in the second photo, it seems as if he's definitely going to get the bag.

Both photos show types of street crime. But I think the first photo shows a more worrying kind of crime. The first photo shows a crime against a person, whereas the second photo shows the theft of some property.

Exercise 5 3.06 page 92

- 1 theme
- 2 both
- 3 unlike
- 4 difference
- 5 show
- 6 whereas

Transcript

See exercise 4.

Exercise 6 page 92

Similarities 1, 2, 5

Differences 3, 4, 6

Exercise 7 3.07 page 92

Transcript

Student Hmm, I'm not sure really. I suppose it's true to say that they're both stealing. But burglary is probably worse.

Teacher Why do you think it's worse?

S In my opinion, it's worse because it affects ordinary people – maybe families, with children. If burglars broke into my house, I would be terrified. Looting from shops is a crime, but it doesn't frighten people in the same way. What is more, the looters aren't taking anyone's personal possessions, so they aren't upsetting anyone.

T OK, thank you.

Exercise 8 3.07 page 92

In my opinion, ..., I'm not sure, really., I suppose it's true to say that ..., What is more, ...

Transcript

See exercise 7.

8H Writing

An email

Exercise 2 page 93

yes

Exercise 3 page 93

Immediately at that moment, just then, suddenly

Some time later a few moments later, after a while, a short while later, before long, shortly afterwards, soon, soon after

Exercise 4 page 93

Immediately at once

Some time later in the end

Exercise 5 page 93

- 1 Before long, the rain stopped.
- 2 Just then, a black car arrived.
- 3 A short while later / A few moments later, a second car appeared.
- 4 At that moment, a woman shouted for help.
- 5 After a while, there were loud gunshots.

Exercise 6 page 93

- 1 on
- 2 by
- 3 in

For further practice of preposition + noun phrases: Vocabulary Builder 8H page 121

- 3 1 on 2 by 3 on 4 for 5 in 6 at 7 on
8 on
- 4 1 on the phone 2 on holiday 3 for a walk
4 at night 5 in a hurry 6 on an excursion
7 by mistake

Exam Skills Trainer 4

Reading

Exercise 1 page 94

Topic 4

Exercise 2 page 94

1 G 2 C 3 D 4 F 5 A 6 E

Listening

Exercise 4 3.08 page 94

- 1 someone who works in a shop
- 2 a news presenter
- 3 an ordinary girl or woman
- 4 a boy looking for a job

Transcript

- 1 Hello and welcome to George Lewis. I'd like to remind you all that this week is sales week in our shop. You will find plenty of bargains on every floor. There is 50% off many items in ladies' and men's fashion and also children's clothing. You can save 20% on digital cameras and some mobile phones, too. And don't forget to visit our café for our offer of the week menu: one child goes free with each paying adult. Thank you, and I hope you enjoy shopping here at George Lewis.
- 2 Last night, thieves stole two paintings from the Swan Street art gallery, in the town centre. The paintings belong to a local artist, Lucien Grey, and are worth around ten thousand pounds each. A witness saw two men loading the paintings into a white van parked on the corner of Swan Street. The men were wearing hats, dark jackets and jeans. The witness thinks they were in their early thirties. Police would like anyone who has any information to contact them as soon as possible. Now, onto the next news story ...
- 3 **Sam** Hi Lucy! Katie told me you're going to South America next year.
Lucy Yeah, that's right. I want to take a gap year and travel around – and work a bit too.
S I'd love to do that, but I haven't got any money.
L You need to save up.
S But that's really hard. How do you do it? Do you stay at home all the time?
L No, you don't need to do that. But I work in the holidays and sometimes at weekends. I don't buy many clothes or CDs any more either. I still go out, but not every night.
S Maybe I need to get a job then.
L I think that's a good idea.

- 4 **Anna** Hey Jake, are you still looking for a job?

Jake No, I've found something in town, in that new clothes shop that opened on the high street last month. My brother's still looking though.

A Oh right, well you can tell him I saw an advert in the restaurant near my house for part-time waiters.

J That sounds good. Is it evenings or lunchtimes?

A I don't know. I've got the number. Do you want to give it to him?

J OK, thanks. I'll put it in my phone.

Exercise 5 3.08 page 94

1 C 2 A 3 C 4 D

Transcript

See exercise 4.

Use of English

Exercise 6 page 95

1 B 2 A 3 C 4 C 5 B 6 C 7 A 8 A

Speaking

Exercise 7 page 95

1 J 2 J 3 O 4 St 5 Su 6 St

Map of resources

9A Vocabulary

Student's Book, pages 96–97; Workbook, page 96

Photocopiable: 9A (Gadgets)

9B Grammar

Student's Book, page 98; Workbook, page 97

Photocopiable: 9B (The passive (present simple and past simple))

9C Listening

Student's Book, page 99; Workbook, page 98

9D Grammar

Student's Book, page 100; Workbook, page 99

Photocopiable: 9D (The passive (present perfect and future))

9E Word Skills

Student's Book, page 101; Workbook, page 100

9F Reading

Student's Book, pages 102–103; Workbook, page 101

9G Speaking

Student's Book, page 104; Workbook, page 102

Photocopiable: Functional Language Practice (Making a complaint)

9H Writing

Student's Book, page 105; Workbook, page 103

Culture 9

Student's Book, page 116

DVD and DVD worksheet: Unit 9

Classroom Presentation Tool Unit 9

End of unit

Unit Review: Workbook, pages 104–105

Photocopiable: Grammar Review

Exam Skills Trainer 5: Student's Book, pages 106–107

Exam Skills Trainer 5: Workbook, pages 106–107

Cumulative Review 1–9: Workbook, pages 116–117

Progress Test and Short Tests: Unit 9

Cumulative Test: Units 6–9

Cumulative Test: Units 1–9

9A Vocabulary

Gadgets

Exercise 2 3.09 page 96

(Possible answers)

- A plastic, rubber, steel B plastic, nylon, rubber, wood
C aluminium, glass, plastic D plastic, nylon, rubber

Transcript

See Student's Book, page 96.

Exercise 5 page 97

- 1 mains 2 mostly 3 handle 4 base 5 allows

Exercise 6 3.10 page 97

battery powered; mains powered; it's got a long handle;
It's got a triangular base; It's made mostly of glass

Transcript

- 1 **Customer** This is lovely. Isn't it lovely? What is it exactly?
Shop assistant It's a coffee machine.
C Oh, yes. Of course. Is it battery powered?
SA No, it's mains powered. Look, the cable's here, under the base. If you press this button, the plug appears.
C That's clever. I love it. It's perfect for my kitchen at home. I'll come back later today and buy it.
SA Would you like to try a cup before you go?
C I'm sorry?
SA A cup of coffee?
C Oh, no thanks. I never drink coffee. Horrible stuff.
2 **Shop assistant** I see you're looking at the cycling machines.
Customer Cycling machines? Oh, yes. Yes, they're very nice, aren't they? A very unusual design.
SA It will look great in your living room. You don't need to put it away if friends come to visit.
C Yes, I see. Good idea. And it's got a long handle. Is that for carrying it?
SA No, that's the seat. It's leather.
C Oh yes, of course. It's heavy, isn't it?
SA Yes. It's got a triangular base that's made of iron. It allows you to cycle very fast without the whole thing shaking.
C And what are these buttons for?
SA That's the computer. If you choose 'share' mode, it automatically posts your workout results on Facebook.
C I see. Yes, I really like it. The thing is, I joined a gym recently.
SA Oh, right.
C But my son is trying to get fit, and he would use it, I'm sure.
3 **Customer** I like this stereo. It's a really unusual design.
Shop assistant Yes, it's amazing, isn't it?
C What's it made of?
SA It's made mostly of glass. Would you like to hear it?
C I didn't bring any CDs.
SA Don't worry. There's one in there. Listen.
C It sounds great!
SA It goes forward to the next track if you just touch here.
C Can you turn it down?
SA Yes, you can turn it up or down. If you wave your hand once, it gets louder. If you ...
C I mean, can you turn it down now, please? Thank you! I'd like to buy it, please.
SA Great! You can pay by credit card or cash.

Exercise 7 3.10 page 97

- 1 press 2 come 3 posts 4 goes 5 gets

Transcript

See exercise 6.

9B Grammar

The passive (present simple and past simple)

Exercise 1 page 98

(Possible answers) make calls, text / send messages, listen to music, take photos, play games, tweet, send and receive emails, search the internet

Exercise 2 page 98

1973 The first mobile phone call was made by Martin Cooper of Motorola.

1986 Voicemail was added to phones.

1992 The first text message was sent.

1997 The camera phone was invented by Philippe Kahn.

Exercise 3 page 98

1 be 2 present 3 past 4 by

Exercise 4 page 98

Nearly a billion mobile phones are sold ... (a)

The first mobile phone call was made ...

The call was answered ...

The first mobiles were powered ... (a)

Voicemail was added ...

Internet access was not added ... (b)

The first text message was sent ...

It was not typed ... (b)

The camera phone was invented ...

Photos of his newborn daughter were shared ... (a)

In the UK, a mobile phone is stolen ...

What are mobile phones used for the most? (c)

For further practice of the passive:

Grammar Builder 9B page 140

1 1 broken 2 taken 3 made 4 sent 5 spent
6 flown 7 tried 8 shown 9 grown 10 known

2 1 was 2 was 3 is 4 is 5 was 6 are
7 were 8 are

3 1 are made 2 is known 3 are used
4 are grown 5 is produced 6 are prepared
7 are cooked 8 are served

4 1 was transmitted 2 was broadcast 3 was sent
4 was sold 5 were made 6 were demonstrated
7 were televised 8 was earned 9 were bought
10 was watched 11 was shown

Exercise 5 page 98

2 were sold 3 are often used 4 is usually answered
5 were bought 6 is accessed 7 are sent
8 was dropped

Exercise 6 page 98

1 was ... watched 2 Were ... rescued 3 are improved
4 was nearly killed 5 is ... allowed
6 was ... laughed at 7 are ... sometimes held
8 were ... found

Exercise 7 page 98

(Possible answers)

- 1 She was watched carefully because she didn't feel pain, so she often injured herself badly.
- 2 No, they weren't. They swam to a beach and were helped by a farmer.
- 3 Players are taught to think about objects in three dimensions and how to react well to failure. Social skills are also improved.
- 4 Ewa Wisnierska was nearly killed by a storm.
- 5 He is allowed to have the day off because he is terrified of Halloween.
- 6 He was laughed at because he fell asleep on the beach with no sunscreen and when he woke up he had white circles round his eyes where his sunglasses had been.
- 7 They are sometimes held at burger bars.
- 8 They were found on a small piece of paper in a secret pocket inside a dead man's trousers.

9C Listening

Intentions of the speaker

Exercise 2 page 99

- 1 to warn 2 to complain 3 to recommend
4 to welcome 5 to enquire 6 to comfort
A 2 B 6 C 4

Exercise 3 3.11 page 99

- 1 b 2 c 3 b 4 c 5 a 6 b

Transcript

- 1 It was really kind of you to lend me your car. I'm really grateful.
- 2 Please come to the film with me. You'll really enjoy it, I'm sure. And I don't want to go on my own.
- 3 This match is going to be tough. The other team are really strong. But I think you can win if you really want to.
- 4 I'm sorry, but this soup is cold. Could you change it, please?
- 5 I'm sorry to hear that you failed your driving test. I know you're upset, but you only made one little mistake and I'm sure you'll pass next time.
- 6 It's great to see so many of you here today for the concert. Thank you very much for coming. I hope you enjoy it.

Exercise 4 3.12 page 99

- 1 c 2 b 3 a 4 a 5 c

Transcript

- 1 We are all aware of the dangers of being overweight and how hard it can be to lose weight. This new health drink which my company has invented can help do just that. It's better than other drinks because it has a new special formula that gives you all the vitamins you need without extra calories. I won't give you all the technical details here but it has been thoroughly tested and is very effective. So, rather than persist with other products, I recommend that you try this new one. I don't think you will be disappointed.
- 2 I sold my old motorbike last month and got this new one. Well, it isn't new, actually – it's second-hand. I couldn't afford a new one. But it's only a couple of years old, and it's as good as new, really – there's hardly a scratch on it.

I was lucky to get it at such a good price. It didn't cost much more than what I got for my old motorbike. I'd get one if I were you, but there aren't many around and you're unlikely to get such a good deal, but it's really worth trying. Yeah, go for it.

- 3 Your high blood pressure is due to a build-up of cholesterol in your arteries. This has probably been caused by eating too many fatty foods and smoking. I can certainly prescribe some drugs that will help to bring down the high cholesterol, but initially I'd like you to make some changes to your diet and increase your level of exercise. Try to avoid eating fatty foods such as cheese, butter, cakes, and so on. Try also to exercise regularly – ideally three times a week for 20 minutes or half an hour. Come back to me in three months. If the level is still high we will consider a course of treatment at that point.
- 4 I came up with the idea for this about five years ago, but only built it in the past twelve months. It's circular with handles on each side. It's battery powered – rechargeable batteries, of course. They are inserted just here. It's made of steel and plastic, and it allows you to browse the internet as well as record film. So it's a computer combined with a camcorder. I've met a quite a few people who might be interested in investing in it, 'cos it'll take a lot of money of course to develop and produce. But I haven't heard back from them ... which is a bit worrying because I need money to start advertising it.
- 5 You'll be delighted to hear that the new minibus which the school purchased has finally arrived. It runs on biofuel, which is sourced from plants, so it is very environmentally friendly. It'll allow the school sports teams to get to and from matches quickly and easily. We were able to purchase the minibus thanks to the money we made at the Christmas fair. We are very grateful to all the people who donated unwanted items for the stalls and who made all those delicious cakes and biscuits. Without you, we wouldn't have this wonderful new bus. I'm sure the bus will be in high demand from the word go.

Exercise 5 3.12 page 99

browse the internet, come up with an idea, get a good deal, lose weight, prescribe drugs, run on biofuel

Transcript

See exercise 4.

9D Grammar

The passive (present perfect and future)

Exercise 2 page 100

The gadget allows people to take a photo simply by blinking. You can also send messages and surf the internet.

Exercise 3 page 100

1 a 2 c 3 b 4 f 5 e 6 d

Present perfect affirmative billions of photos have been uploaded to social networking sites; Wearable gadgets have recently been developed ...

Present perfect negative They haven't been replaced yet ...; ... we haven't even thought of

For further practice of the passive (present perfect and future): Grammar Builder 9D page 140

- 5 2 haven't been washed 3 Has ... been checked
4 has been built 5 hasn't been shown
6 Has ... been delivered 7 have been sold
8 have been invited 9 hasn't been marked
- 6 1 will be uploaded 2 will be scanned
3 will be stored 4 will be backed up
5 won't be lost 6 won't be charged 7 will be sent
- 7 2 Three men have been arrested.
3 Desktop computers probably won't be needed ten years from now.
4 The bus stop has been vandalised by youths.
5 Celluloid film cameras have been replaced by digital cameras.
6 The CCTV footage will be studied by the police.
7 Computers that can think like humans haven't been invented.

Exercise 4 page 100

- 1 will be grown 2 will be connected
3 will be assisted 4 will be worn 5 will be driven;
won't be needed 6 will ... be watched

Exercise 5 page 100

- 1 will be controlled 2 will ... be connected 3 will be spoken
4 will be driven 5 will be bought and sold
6 will be built

Exercise 7 page 100

- 2 have been sold 3 have been uploaded
4 have been shared 5 have been watched

Exercise 8 page 100

- 2 Have you ever been punished for something you didn't do?
3 Have you ever been involved in an accident?
4 Have you ever been hurt while doing sport?
5 Have you ever been criticised by a good friend?
6 Have you ever been stung by a bee?

9E Word Skills

Verb + preposition

Exercise 3 page 101

- for** search for, prepare for
about learn about
of consist of
to adjust to
with cope with

Exercise 4 page 101

from

Exercise 5 page 101

- 1 apologised 2 about 3 of 4 asked 5 laugh
6 with

Exercise 7 page 101

- 1a of 1b about 2a for 2b about 3a about 3b of
4a to 4b at 5a to 5b about 6a to 6b with

Exercise 8 page 101

1 about 2 with; about 3 about 4 to 5 in 6 to

9F Reading**Great inventions?****Exercise 4** page 102

B 4 (2 BC) D 3 (1865) C 1 (1897) A 2 (1925)

Exercise 5 page 102

A 4 B 1, 2, 3 C 1, 2, 3 D 4 E 2 F 1, 3

Exercise 6 page 102

The text says that 'the other two weighed nearly 200,000 kg!' We don't know which one was the heaviest, or if they were both the same weight.

Exercise 7 page 102

1 T 2 F 3 DNS 4 T 5 DNS 6 T 7 DNS 8 T

Exercise 8 page 102

a invention b recordings c deafness d baldness
e movement f arrangement g discovery
h reconstructions

9G Speaking**Making a complaint****Exercise 2** 3.14 page 104

1 b 2 b 3 a 4 a

Transcript

Teacher Hello. Can I help you?

Student Yes, I bought this portable DVD player here six months ago and there's a problem with it.

T Oh, dear. What's wrong with it?

S I can't switch it on. I press the on/off button and nothing happens.

T Let me have a look. Yes, you're right. Are the batteries fully charged?

S Yes, they are. It doesn't work even when the power lead is connected.

T Have you got the receipt?

S Yes, here it is. I'd like to exchange it, please.

T I'm afraid that won't be possible. It's over a month old, you see.

S Is there anything else you can do?

T We can repair it for you.

S How long will that take?

T About two to three weeks.

S OK, then. Repair it, please.

For further practice of gadget vocabulary:**Vocabulary Builder 9G** page 121

- 1 A digital radio B camcorder
C Blu-ray player D digital photo frame
E solar-powered battery charger F satnav
2 1 smart TV 2 hard disc recorder 3 satnav
4 headphones 5 e-book reader

Exercise 4 3.14 page 104

Yes, the student mentioned all four points and responded well to the sales assistant's contributions.

Transcript

See exercise 2.

Exercise 5 page 104

(Possible answers)

digital camera battery, case, charger, on/off button, screen, strap

digital radio battery, charger, on/off button, power lead, volume control

DVD player on/off button, power lead, remote control, USB port, volume control

e-book reader battery, case, charger, on/off button, screen, USB port

games console on/off button, power lead, volume control

headphones volume control

mobile phone battery, case, charger, on/off button, screen, volume control

MP3 player battery, case, charger, on/off button, screen, volume control

smartphone battery, case, charger, on/off button, screen, USB port, volume control

tablet battery, case, charger, on/off button, screen, volume control

Exercise 6 3.15 page 104

screen, case

Transcript

Teacher Hello. How can I help you?

Student I bought this tablet here last week. There's a problem with it.

T Oh. What's wrong with it?

S The screen is broken. Look.

T How did that happen?

S I dropped it.

T Oh, dear. Well, we can repair it for you. But you'll have to pay for the repair.

S Why? It's only a week old. Can I have my money back, please?

T No, I'm afraid you can't. You broke it, you see. It isn't a fault with the tablet.

S But it shouldn't break when you drop it. And it was in its case.

T The glass is very delicate. It can break quite easily. I'm very sorry but there's nothing I can do.

S Can I exchange it, please?

T No, as I said, we can repair it, but we'll have to charge you.

S Well, how much will it cost?

T About £80, I think.

S Eighty pounds! I'm not happy about that. Can I see the manager, please?

T He isn't in the shop at the moment.

S Well, if you won't exchange it or give me a refund, I'm going to write to the manager.

T As you wish.

S Thank you and goodbye.

T Goodbye.

Exercise 7 page 104

- 1 problem 2 something 3 work 4 stopped
5 broken 6 come 7 money 8 exchange
9 repair 10 happy 11 manager 12 write

Exercise 8  3.15 **page 104**

There's a problem with ... It's broken. Can I have my money back, please? Can I exchange it, please? I'm not happy about that. Can I see the manager, please? I'm going to write to ...

Transcript

See exercise 6.

Exercise 9 **page 104**

1 f 2 h 3 d 4 a 5 e 6 c 7 b 8 g

9H Writing**A formal letter****Exercise 3** **page 105**

1 as, since 2 rather than 3 unless 4 so

For further practice of conjunctions:

Vocabulary Builder 9H **page 121**

3 1 c 2 a 3 c 4 b

Exercise 4 **page 105**

1 D 2 A 3 F 4 B

Exercise 5 **page 105**

All in all, ...

Exam Skills Trainer 5**Reading****Exercise 1** **page 106**

1 an advert 2 an article 3 a description
4 an article 5 an article

Exercise 2 **page 106**

1 A 2 C 3 B 4 A 5 B

Listening**Exercise 4**  3.16 **page 107**

1 F 2 T 3 F 4 T 5 T 6 F 7 T 8 F

Transcript

People have always looked up at the planets and dreamed of exploring space. The history of the telescope dates back to the early 1600s. Many people say that Galileo invented the telescope, but this is not actually true. In 1609, he was the first person to use a telescope to study the stars, but it's thought that a man named Hans Lipperhey invented it in 1608. Galileo learned about this invention and built his own. At first people used it on land and at sea, but then Galileo had the idea of turning his telescope toward the sky. In March 1610 he wrote about his many discoveries including that the moon was not flat and smooth, but had mountains and craters, and that Jupiter had its own moons. After this, people not only wanted to look at the stars and the planets, they wanted to travel in space. They started researching different ways to get there. The first successful flight was in 1944 when a German V-2 rocket went on a test flight. It was the beginning of many 'firsts'. In 1957 the Russians launched Sputnik 1 which was the first satellite to orbit the Earth.

The first successful human space flight was when the Russian astronaut Yuri Gagarin travelled in a spacecraft called Vostok 1, in 1961. It completed one orbit around the Earth. The first object to land on the moon was Luna 2, in 1959. The first woman in space was Valentina Tereshkova, in 1963. And in 1969, the first men walked on the moon. Since then, there have been many attempts by scientists to explore Mars. There have been around forty attempts to get there by different countries and more than half have failed. Many people might think this is a waste of time. However, I don't agree with them because already scientists have discovered many interesting things about the planet including signs of water and possible life. More recently, in 2014, India successfully sent the latest spacecraft to send back images of the planet.

Use of English**Exercise 5** **page 107**

1 adverb 2 noun 3 comparative adjective
4 adjective 5 adverb 6 adverb 7 adjective
8 adjective

Exercise 6 **page 107**

1 accidentally 2 customer 3 longer 4 happy
5 thinly 6 Strangely 7 famous 8 nervous

Speaking**Exercise 7** **page 107**

1, 2, 5, 6, 8

Writing**Exercise 10** **page 107**

1 send 2 haven't entered 3 always work
4 I'm going to 5 I'm writing 6 I'm looking forward



1 The British

Exercise 2 page 108

a true b true

Exercise 3 page 108

1 good manners 2 reserve 3 sense of humour
4 culture 5 reserve 6 worse 7 better

Exercise 4 3.18 page 108

Transcript

- 1 I love the UK. I just love the atmosphere, the culture, the art, the history. There is also beautiful scenery in places like Cornwall and Scotland. The people here are kind and friendly. The only things I don't like about the UK are the weather and the food. I had some really bad fish and chips recently!
- 2 British people don't care about their work like we do. They aren't very hard-working really – they spend all day waiting to finish work and go home! And when they leave work, they forget about it. I have my own café here in Cardiff and for me, my work is my life.
- 3 I find British people very friendly and I love an English breakfast and fish and chips. But I don't like it when I finish work at 11 p.m. or midnight and young people are causing trouble in the street. It's not always nice and they make a lot of noise. I don't worry for me but I'm anxious for my wife at night over here. Overall though I like living in Britain. It's much better than back home.
- 4 OK, the weather definitely is not great but I love the freedom of living in the UK. It's so friendly and welcoming. It was difficult for me when I first arrived at the age of sixteen. I was used to rules. My family came first and I always obeyed my parents. I never answered back. But British teenagers have so much more freedom. They don't have many rules, and that's not always a good thing. They often behave badly.
- 5 The culture here is amazing and I really like the literature. Shakespeare is one of my favourites and I love Mr Bean. Like me, Rowan Atkinson, the actor, studied electrical engineering at university. But people here are lazy. You get too many holidays – especially students.

Exercise 5 3.18 page 108

A 1, 4 B 3 C 2, 5 D 3, 4 E 1, 5 F 1, 3, 4

Transcript

See exercise 4.

2 Robinson Crusoe

Exercise 2 page 109

1 b 2 a 3 a 4 c 5 b 6 c 7 a

Exercise 4 3.20 page 109

Transcript

I took my prisoner to my secret cave on the other side of the island and gave him food and drink. After that, he went to sleep.

He was a fine young man, about 25 years old, tall and well-built, with a kind face and nice smile. I decided to give him the name of 'Man Friday', because I first saw him on a Friday.

I began to teach him to speak English, and soon he could say his name, 'Master', and 'Yes' and 'No'. How good it was to hear a man's voice again!

Later that day we went back to my first house. We went carefully along the beach, but there were no boats and no cannibals.

Friday was a quick learner and his English got better day by day. He helped me with the goats and with the work in the cornfields, and soon we were good friends. I enjoyed teaching him and, most of all, having a friend to talk to. This was the happiest of all my years on the island.

Friday and I lived together happily for three years. I told him the story of my adventures and about life in England, and he told me about his country and his people. One day we were at the top of the highest hill on the island and we were looking out to sea. It was a very clear day and we could see a long way. Suddenly, Friday began to jump up and down, very excitedly.

'What's the matter?' I asked.

'Look, Master, look!' Friday cried. 'I can see my country. Look over there!'

I began to think about escape. Perhaps Friday wanted to go home too. Perhaps together we could get to his country. But what then? Would Friday still be my friend?

Exercise 5 3.20 page 109

1 Why 2 What 3 When 4 How long 5 Where

- 1 Because he first saw him on a Friday.
- 2 He taught him to speak English.
- 3 They went back to Crusoe's first house later that day.
- 4 They lived together for three years.
- 5 They were at the top of the highest hill on the island.

Transcript

See exercise 4.

3 Screen exports

Exercise 2 page 110

A drama B science fiction C talent show

Exercise 3 page 110

1 T 2 F 3 F 4 F 5 T

Exercise 4 3.22 page 110

Top Gear is popular because it contains a lot of humour and people like the relationship between the three presenters.

Transcript

Top Gear, a BBC TV programme about cars, is the most popular factual TV programme in the world. Every week, about 350 million people watch it in 170 different countries. In most countries, they watch the British version of the programme, but a few countries bought the format from the BBC and made their own versions. However, this was not always a good decision. Russia and Australia both made their own programmes, following the same format as the British programme, but they were not popular with viewers. In the end, both countries decided to show the original BBC programme instead.

Top Gear began about forty years ago, in the 1970s. In the early days, it was quite a serious programme with lots of information about new cars. But in 2002, it changed its style completely – and as a result became far more popular and successful. The programme was still about cars, but it also contained a lot of humour. They started filming the show in front of a live audience and the atmosphere was like a party. The programme's presenters – Jeremy Clarkson, Richard Hammond and James May – became well-known celebrities in the UK and around the world. Although all three presenters are male, a lot of the programme's viewers – about 40% in fact – are female.

The new version of the programme introduced a character called The Stig – a racing driver who tested new cars. Nobody knew the identity of The Stig because he always wore a racing driver's helmet. People wondered if it could be a famous Formula 1 driver, and the mystery made the show even more popular.

But the relationship between the three presenters is probably the main reason for the programme's success. However, in 2015, the main presenter Jeremy Clarkson lost his job. He had an argument with another person who was working on the show, and Clarkson hit him! Richard Hammond and James May also left the show. But that is not the end of *Top Gear*. The BBC is now making the show with new presenters.

Exercise 5 3.22 page 110

- 1 170 2 the British 3 1977 4 three 5 40
6 racing driver

Transcript

See exercise 4.

4 The English language

Exercise 2 page 111

- 1 F 2 F 3 F 4 T 5 T

Exercise 3 page 111

- 1 North Germany and Holland 2 Latin
3 the west and north 4 Norse 5 English
6 dad 7 26%

Exercise 4 3.23 page 111

5

Transcript

Host Today in our series about the English language we are talking about English as a global language. In the studio with me is professor of linguistics, Edward Higgins. Welcome, Professor Higgins.

Professor Thank you.

H So, can you tell us how English became a global language?

P Yes. Well, English spread around the world during the 18th and 19th centuries. At that time, Britain was a very powerful country and it had a large empire. English became the most important language in countries like Canada, Australia and New Zealand, and a second language in countries such as Pakistan and India. It also became the first language in the USA.

H And of course the USA is now the most powerful country in the world.

P Yes, so English continues to be very important. The enormous influence of American culture since 1945 means that English is now more than ever a global language.

H How important is the influence of technology?

P Very important. English is already the language of popular culture, films and TV, and of science, business, aviation and tourism. It has now also become the language of the internet; about 55% of the world's websites are in English and experts estimate that 80% of all emails are in English too.

H Just how many English speakers are there?

P That depends on how you count them! But there are about 335 million people who use English as their first language. In addition, there are about 430 million people who speak it as their second language, in countries like India, South Africa and the West Indies.

H And a lot of people learn English as a foreign language too, don't they?

P Yes, about 750 million people learn English as a foreign language in over 100 countries.

H So how many speakers is that in total?

P About 1.5 billion speakers worldwide.

H Wow. That's a lot of people. I guess not everyone is happy about how widespread and how important English is becoming?

P That's right. Some people think English is too powerful. They see English as a threat to their own language. In Britain for example, Welsh has only five hundred thousand speakers. Can it survive alongside English, which has 60 million? Maybe not. And people in other countries don't like all the words that their languages borrow from English. Some French people for example object to words like 'weekend' and 'blog' and 'email'.

H Will English continue to be the most important language in the world?

P Probably, but the power of the USA may decline and China and India might become the next superpowers. In one hundred years from now, it's possible that we will all need to speak Chinese or Hindi! Nobody really knows.

Exercise 5 3.23 page 111

- 1 English spread around the world during those centuries.
2 Since then, American culture has had an enormous influence on the world.
3 the percentage of websites in English
4 the number of people who use English as their first language
5 the number of English speakers worldwide
6 the number of Welsh speakers in Britain
7 We might all need to speak Chinese or Hindi then.

Transcript

See exercise 4.

5 British entrepreneurs

Exercise 2 page 112

1 in 2 as 3 to 4 got 5 to 6 that / which
7 later 8 to 9 of 10 of

Exercise 3 page 112

- 1 Italy
- 2 She trained as an English teacher.
- 3 a restaurant and a small hotel
- 4 in South America
- 5 They were natural and not tested on animals.
- 6 Because she sold Body Shop to L'Oréal.

Exercise 4 3.25 page 112

1 f 2 b 3 d 4 a 5 g 6 c 7 e

Transcript

Richard Branson was born in London in 1950. He didn't do very well at school and left when he was sixteen. His head teacher said to him, 'You will either end up in prison or become a millionaire.' One of these came true: Branson is now the sixth richest person in Britain. After leaving school, Branson started a student magazine, called *Student*. He used the magazine to start his next business, a mail-order record company. He advertised pop records in the magazine and sold them for much less than the music shops charged. He called his company 'Virgin'. Soon he was able to open his first music shop in London. He then decided to not only sell records but also to produce them. He built a recording studio and had an instant hit with Mike Oldfield's *Tubular Bells*. He attracted lots of new young musicians and groups, especially punk bands like the Sex Pistols. Bigger bands like the Rolling Stones and Genesis followed, and Virgin Records became one of the biggest record companies in the UK. But Branson was looking for new challenges. In the early 90s, he sold his record company and started an airline, Virgin Atlantic, which flies from the UK to destinations all over the world. He also started a train company in 1993 and a mobile phone company in 1999. Branson not only likes business challenges; he also likes personal challenges and has tried to break a number of world records. In 1986 he sailed across the Atlantic Ocean in record time and in 1991 he made the fastest crossing of the Pacific Ocean in a hot-air balloon. His average speed was 394 kilometres per hour! Branson's most recent business is Virgin Galactic, a space tourism company. Watch this space!

Exercise 5 3.25 page 112

1 T 2 F 3 F 4 T 5 T

Transcript

See exercise 4.

Exercise 6 page 112

Roman Abramovich Russian business leader and owner of Chelsea Football Club
Coco Chanel French fashion designer
Simon Cowell English music producer and talent show judge
Walt Disney American animator, film director, film producer and screenwriter
Henry Ford American founder of Ford Motor Company
Bill Gates American co-founder of Microsoft
Steve Jobs American co-founder of Apple Inc.

6 Alcatraz

Exercise 1 page 113

1 a 2 b 3 c

Exercise 3 page 113

cheap expensive easy difficult empty full hot cold
large small safe dangerous slow fast
unpopular popular weak strong

Exercise 4 page 113

- 1 2.4 kilometres
- 2 Because the water is very cold and there are fast, strong currents.
- 3 about 30 years
- 4 Al Capone
- 5 Because it was very expensive to run.
- 6 over one and a half million

Exercise 5 3.27 page 113

1 T 2 F 3 F

Transcript

Presenter So, here we are inside Alcatraz. I'm with Danny Bergman, who works at the museum and shows people round. Hi Danny.

Danny Hello. And welcome to Alcatraz!

P Thanks. I'm looking forward to the tour!

D Well, the first thing I'll show you is a prison cell. Come this way. Here we are. This is a typical cell.

P Wow, it's so small!

D Yes, it's 2.7 metres long and 1.5 metres wide. The prisoners could stretch their arms out and touch both walls, like this.

P Oh, yes.

D Each cell had a bed with one blanket, a desk, a toilet and a small washbasin. Each prisoner had his own cell. Black prisoners stayed in cells in a different block.

P What did the prisoners do all day?

D They got up at 6.30, had breakfast at 7, then tidied their cells. If they were lucky, and behaved well, they were allowed to work, from 7.30. If not, they had to stay in their cells. Lunch was at 11.20 and then they worked again until 4.25. The guards locked the cell doors at 5 o'clock and turned off the lights at 9.30.

P It doesn't sound like fun!

D No, it wasn't. There was a library, though, with 15,000 books and prisoners could borrow three books at a time. The average prisoner read about 85 books a year. They could also play musical instruments for an hour a day in the canteen, if they wanted to.

P Could they go outside?

D Only at weekends, for a maximum of five hours. They could play baseball in the recreation yard.

P And what about visitors?

D Each prisoner could have one visitor a month.

P Those are very tough rules!

D Yes, they are. And if they broke the rules, the punishments were very harsh.

P Did any prisoners escape?

D Thirty-six men tried to escape, including two who tried to escape twice. The guards recaptured twenty-three men, including two who successfully managed to leave the island and reach the city. The guards shot and killed six others

during their escape, and two prisoners drowned trying to swim across the bay.

P That makes ... 31. What about the other five?

D Nobody knows what happened to them. Have you heard of the famous Hollywood film *Escape from Alcatraz*?

P The Clint Eastwood film? Yes.

D Well, that film tells their story. The five men planned a very clever and detailed escape over seven months. They disappeared one night and were never seen again. The FBI looked for them but never found them.

P What do you think happened?

D I don't know. They probably drowned, but it's nice to think that maybe they got away!

Exercise 6 3.27 page 113

1 b 2 a 3 b 4 c 5 c

Transcript

See exercise 5.

7 Wall Street

Exercise 2 page 114

1 b 2 a 3 c 4 b 5 c 6 c 7 b

Exercise 3 page 114

- 1 It is the name of a street in New York City's financial district. Some people use 'Wall Street' to mean the whole financial district.
- 2 9.30 a.m. to 4 p.m.
- 3 It was doing better before 1929 because millions of people wanted to invest money.
- 4 The value of investments started to fall and the New York Stock Exchange lost 89% of its value.

Exercise 4 page 114

There are four different pieces of information.

Exercise 5 3.29 page 114

average family income and world trade

Transcript

The Great Depression began at the end of the 1920s and lasted until the end of the 1930s. It was the worst depression in history and it began with the Wall Street Crash of October 1929. During that crash, the stock exchange fell by 89% and many investors lost all of their money. But why did that have such a bad effect on the rest of the country? After all, most ordinary people had nothing to do with Wall Street and no money to invest anyway. Why did they suffer when the stock market fell?

Basically, when the Wall Street Crash happened, the whole nation lost confidence in the country's economy. Banks did not want to lend money to people who needed it and people with money did not want to keep it in banks. As a result, more than half of the 25,000 banks in the USA went out of business.

People were very anxious about the economic situation so they were careful with their money. They didn't spend much. So shops went out of business and people lost their jobs. Factories began to close down and more people became unemployed. In 1930, 4 million Americans were looking for work but could not find it. A year later, the number was 6 million. Because there were not enough jobs, many people could not afford to pay the rent for their homes. In America's

towns and cities, there were more and more homeless people.

The President, Herbert Hoover, did not want to take any action. He believed that the situation would get better soon by itself. But he was wrong – it got worse. Much worse. By 1932, about 15 million people – that's 25% of the working population – could not find a job.

In 1932, the American people elected a new president: Franklin D Roosevelt. He decided that he needed to help the economy out of depression, and he did this by spending huge amounts of government money on big projects. He used these projects to give work to millions of unemployed people. And he often spoke to the American people over the radio, trying to improve confidence. His efforts did help the economy – but in fact the start of the Second World War in 1939 helped much more. Finally the factories and workers were busy again. By 1940, unemployment was down to 10% – remember, it had been around 25% in 1932. But it took until 1954 for the New York Stock Exchange to reach the same level as before the Wall Street Crash of October 1929.

Exercise 6 3.29 page 114

number of banks that went out of business; increase in employment after 1939

Transcript

See exercise 5.

8 Sherlock Holmes

Exercise 1 page 115

(Possible answer) Sherlock Holmes is wearing a coat and a deerstalker hat. He is smoking a pipe and he is examining something with a magnifying glass.

Exercise 2 page 115

1 b 2 c 3 a 4 c 5 a 6 c 7 a 8 b

Exercise 4 3.31 page 115

1 78 2 appealing / fascinating 3 dark 4 bed
5 woman 6 girlfriends

Transcript

Presenter Today on *Film Review*, I'm talking to Mark Jackson about the famous detective, Sherlock Holmes. First of all, Mark, can you tell us how many film and TV adaptations of the Sherlock Holmes stories there are?

Mark There are hundreds. No one knows exactly because some have been lost. But the first was a short film made in 1900. Lots were made in the 1920s, and it hasn't stopped since. At least seventy-eight different actors have played the character of Sherlock Holmes in films and TV dramas.

P Wow, that's amazing.

M Yes, no other fictional character has appeared so often on cinema and TV screens.

P Why is that? What is it about the stories that is so appealing?

M I think it's the character of Holmes. The stories themselves are not that brilliant – they're good, they're clever, but there are better detective stories. It's really the character of Holmes that is unique and fascinating.

P In what way?

M Well, he's a very complex character. He is extremely intelligent – he believes that no one is as intelligent as himself, except perhaps his great enemy, Professor Moriarty.

P So, arrogant and vain, too.

M Yes, arrogant and vain. And he doesn't care what other people think of him. But he's also very imaginative, very observant and also very brave.

P And he has a dark side to his character, doesn't he?

M Yes. He's very unemotional, very cold. He's quite unsympathetic. He can't understand other people's feelings. And he doesn't understand women at all. Dr Watson describes him in one of the stories as 'a brain without a heart' and 'more a machine than a man'.

P Does he have hobbies or other interests?

M He plays the violin. But he gets bored and depressed very easily. And when he's feeling down, he sometimes goes to bed and sleeps all day!

P So like many popular heroes he has lots of faults.

M Yes, in that way he is very human.

P There are two recent TV adaptations of the Sherlock Holmes stories, a British one and an American one.

M Yes, and the interesting thing is that the stories are set in the present day. So there's the BBC drama called Sherlock, starring Benedict Cumberbatch. They use some of the original stories but they have added lots of humour. Then there's an American show called Elementary. It's set in New York, and it stars Jonny Lee Miller as Holmes and Lucy Liu as Watson.

P Lucy Liu? A woman! That's different!

M Yes, but it works, I think.

P And it's set in New York. So is Holmes American?

M No, Miller plays him as British. But Miller has changed Holmes's character a bit. Miller's Holmes is very scruffy, whereas in the original stories Holmes is very well-dressed. And in the TV series Holmes has girlfriends.

P Really? Is Watson his girlfriend?

M No, not Watson. That would be too far from the original story and make them very different characters.

P Do you think there will ever be a female Holmes?

M People have accepted a female Watson, so yeah, why not? I think it's bound to happen sometime.

Exercise 5 page 115

Positive brave, confident, curious, imaginative, intelligent, logical, observant

Negative arrogant, cold, cynical, easily bored, proud, stubborn, unemotional, unsympathetic, vain

Exercise 6 3.31 page 115

arrogant, brave, cold, easily bored, imaginative, intelligent, observant, unemotional, unsympathetic, vain

Transcript

See exercise 4.

9 Computer pioneers

Exercise 2 page 116

- 1 The large machine is the Bombe, designed by Alan Turing. It is an early form of computer used for breaking complex codes.
- 2 The smaller machine is the earlier Enigma machine, used by the Germans to send out and receive coded information.
- 3 The Enigma machine is from the 1930s and the Bombe is from World War II.

Exercise 3 page 116

1 d 2 c 3 f 4 b 5 g 6 a 7 e

Exercise 5 3.33 page 116

The first computer program was written before the first computer was built.

Transcript

Ada Lovelace was born in 1815 into a rich family. She was the daughter of the British aristocrat and famous poet, Lord Byron. However, she did not grow up with him. She was brought up by her mother, who made sure that Ada had a very good education. She was particularly good at maths and science, and took a keen interest in the scientific inventions and discoveries of her day.

At that time, a British mathematician called Charles Babbage was working on a machine for doing complex calculations. He called his machine a Difference Engine. He began to build the machine, but he did not finish it because he had a better idea. He called his new idea the Analytical Engine, and it was better because it had a kind of memory. In fact, he didn't finish building this one either. Babbage never really finished anything!

Ada Lovelace met Charles Babbage and the two became friends. Ada began working with Babbage and because she was a brilliant mathematician, she understood how important his ideas were. She realised that it was possible to write programs for the Analytical Engine. Because it had a memory, it could do complex calculations, step-by-step. In a scientific paper, she described how to do this and gave an example. Because the machine was never built, the example was never tested. Nevertheless, most computer scientists see Ada Lovelace's work as the first computer program in the world – and it was written years before the first computer existed!

Ada Lovelace died in 1852 at the age of 36. The importance of her work was not realised for another hundred years. But today, she is seen as an important figure in the history of science. A modern computer programming language is named after her – Ada. And every October, Ada Lovelace Day celebrates the role of women in science, technology, maths and engineering.

Exercise 6 3.33 page 116

1 F 2 F 3 T 4 T 5 F 6 F

Transcript

See exercise 5.



Introduction

IA Vocabulary

Likes and dislikes

Exercise 1 page 4

I love / I'm really keen on; I like; I don't mind; I don't like;
I can't stand / I hate

- 1 swimming 2 dancing 3 I don't mind
4 I like 5 I don't like

Exercise 2 page 4

- 1 don't mind 2 love 3 don't mind / quite like
4 really keen 5 is great 6 can't stand / hate
7 can't stand / hate 8 terrible 9 isn't bad

Exercise 3 page 4

- 1 basketball 2 drawing 3 swimming 4 chess
5 board games 6 video games 7 cycling
8 ice hockey 9 volleyball

IB Grammar

Contrast: present simple and present continuous

Exercise 1 page 5

- 1 Do you go; don't go; go
2 Does Sam study; doesn't; studies
3 teach; teaches; 's
4 Do your parents work; work
5 Do you practise; practise; makes

Exercise 2 page 5

- 1 Are you having 2 'm calling 3 are staying
4 are enjoying 5 am planning 6 am relaxing
7 am running 8 are thinking 9 is shining

Exercise 3 page 5

- 1 c 2 e 3 f 4 b 5 d 6 a

Exercise 4 page 5

- 1 scores 2 believe 3 is trying 4 is cooking
5 reads 6 'm watching 7 gets up 8 is coming
9 plays 10 understand

Exercise 5 page 5

- 1 is 2 're having 3 'm enjoying 4 put on
5 're working 6 has 7 're practising 8 'm trying
9 'm playing 10 forget 11 believe 12 are travelling
13 're 14 hope

IC Vocabulary

Describing people

Exercise 1 page 6

- 1 long, straight, black 2 short, curly, dark
3 medium-length, wavy, fair 4 short, straight, dark
5 long, wavy, dark 6 medium-length, straight, dark

Exercise 2 page 6

- 1 boots 2 coat 3 socks 4 tie 5 trainers 6 hoodie
7 jeans 8 T-shirt 9 gloves 10 dress

Exercise 3 page 6

(Possible answers)

- 1 He's got short, straight, dark hair. He's wearing a coat and tie.
2 She's got shoulder-length, straight, fair hair. She's wearing a dress and gloves.
3 He's got short, wavy, fair hair and a dark beard. He's wearing jeans, a T-shirt and a jacket.
4 She's got short, wavy, dark hair. She's wearing dark trousers and a dark jacket.

Exercise 4 page 6

- 1 long 2 straight 3 dark 4 scarf 5 jacket
6 short 7 wavy 8 brown 9 eyes 10 moustache
11 tie 12 shirt

ID Grammar

Articles

Exercise 1 page 7

- 1 d 2 e 3 a 4 c 5 f 6 b

Exercise 2 page 7

- 1 the 2 the, - 3 the 4 - 5 -, - 6 -
7 the, - 8 the, -

Exercise 3 page 7

- 1 the 2 a 3 - 4 an, the 5 the 6 - 7 -, an
8 a 9 the 10 -

Exercise 4 page 7

- 1 the 2 a 3 the 4 The 5 the 6 the
7 a 8 a 9 the

Exercise 5 page 7

- 1 There are 2 There is 3 There are 4 there is
5 There are 6 There are 7 there is 8 there is
9 There are 10 There is

Exercise 6 page 7

- 2 They - There 3 in a football 4 for work
5 an - a 6 It - There 7 the - a 8 A - The
9 the - a 10 in geography

Unit 1 Feelings

1A Vocabulary

How do you feel?

Exercise 1 page 8

1 excited 2 relieved 3 cross 4 anxious 5 proud
6 suspicious 7 bored 8 frightened 9 envious
10 upset 11 confused 12 shocked

Mystery word: disappointed

Exercise 2 page 8

1 extremely 2 very 3 rather 4 a bit 5 a little bit

Exercise 3 page 8

2 delighted 3 embarrassed 4 proud 5 upset
6 anxious 7 frightened 8 relieved

Exercise 4 1.02 page 8

1 relieved 2 suspicious 3 envious 4 ashamed

Transcript

- 1 The other team weren't very good and we quickly scored three goals. But then we relaxed, I think. We thought, 'This is easy! We're going to win. No problem at all.' But then, in the second half, the other team scored three goals, so it was 3-3. And there were only five minutes left. But luckily we managed to score in the last minute and win the match.
- 2 I arranged to meet my boyfriend Jake last night, but he texted an hour before and said sorry, he was busy. I texted back, 'Busy? What are you doing?' 'I'm staying in. Really sorry. See you tomorrow,' he said. But then Sally saw him in town with Lizzie. That's what she said, anyway. So, did he stay in? I don't know.
- 3 There's a boy in my class who's good at everything. He gets top marks in all the subjects and he doesn't seem to work very hard. He's also very good at sport and is captain of the football team. And he's good-looking and popular with the girls! How does he do it?!
- 4 I had a really bad argument with my sister last night. She borrowed my jeans without asking me and I got a bit cross, and she got very upset. I was just tired and wasn't feeling very well. It was silly because we often borrow clothes from each other. I feel so bad about it. I'm going to apologise straight away when I get home.

1B Grammar

Past simple (affirmative)

Exercise 1 page 9

1 studied 2 moved 3 looked 4 stopped 5 talked
6 decided 7 dropped 8 married 9 wanted
10 died

Exercise 2 page 9

1 chose 2 found 3 went 4 stole 5 began
6 took 7 felt 8 were 9 got 10 spent

Exercise 3 page 9

1 was 2 won 3 gave 4 started 5 took
6 invited 7 had 8 had 9 was 10 said 11 got
12 answered 13 was 14 was 15 decided 16 gave
17 said 18 died 19 chose 20 helped

Exercise 4 page 9

1 were 2 dropped 3 gave 4 studied 5 spent

1C Listening

Problems, problems!

Exercise 1 page 10

1 make 2 have 3 give 4 take 5 made 6 tell
7 take 8 tell

Exercise 2 page 10

2 shouldn't listen 3 should look 4 shouldn't feel
5 should invite 6 should tell 7 should spend
8 should go

Exercise 4 1.03 page 10

1 a 2 b 3 a

Transcript

- 1 **Ben** Hi, Ellie. How are you?
Ellie Oh, I'm OK, thanks.
B You don't sound very happy.
E Well, to be honest, I'm a bit upset about the school show. It doesn't look like I can be in it this year.
B Why not?
E Because a relative of mine is getting married – and the wedding is on the same night as the first performance.
B That's bad luck!
E I know.
- 2 **Leo** Hi, Daisy. What are you up to?
Daisy I'm reading an email from my cousin in Canada. He's planning to visit us next month! I can't wait ...
L That's good news. But I didn't think you got on with him that well.
D I don't. But he's OK.
L I don't understand. You seem really excited ...
D I know – because he's bringing me a DVD of the new Twilight film! It isn't in the shops here, only in America.
L Oh, OK. Now I see. Fantastic!
D I know!
- 3 **Molly** Hi, James. What's wrong?
James Oh, nothing. I'm fine, really – just a bit worried.
M Why's that?
J I've got a piano exam this afternoon and I don't think I'm ready for it. I need to practise more.
M Can't you practise now? It's only ten o'clock in the morning. You've got loads of time.
J The problem is, I've got to finish my homework before lunch!
M Oh dear. Can I help at all?
J No, it's OK. I just need to concentrate. See you later!

Exercise 5 1.04 page 10

A 5 B 1 C 3 D 2

Transcript

- A Sophia** Hi, Charlie. You don't look very happy. Is there a problem?
Charlie Well, yes. I just don't know what to do.
S Tell me about it.
C Well, you know I'm in the basketball team ...
S Yes. You're really good!
C Well, I want to stop playing.
S Stop playing? Why?
C I haven't got time. I've got too much schoolwork this year.
S So ... what's the problem?
C I feel bad about leaving the team in the middle of the year.
S Why don't you talk to your team-mates about it?
C I talked to them yesterday. They were really upset! They say they need me in the team.
S Oh dear – I see your problem.
C What can I do?
S I don't know. Sorry!
- B Maisie** Hi, Daniel.
Daniel Oh, hello, Maisie. How are you?
M Oh ... OK, I suppose.
D You don't sound very happy!
M Well, I've got this problem.
D What is it?
M My aunt gave me two tickets to a One Direction concert. It was for my birthday.
D But you hate One Direction!
M I know. That's the problem! I don't want to go to the concert.
D My sister loves One Direction. You can give the tickets to her.
M But what can I tell my aunt? Do you think I should tell the truth?
D Hmm. No, I don't. Just say you went to the concert and enjoyed it.
M Really? Is that OK?
D I think it is, yes. I mean, you don't want your aunt to be upset, do you?
M No. I guess you're right, Daniel.
- C Emma** Hello, Luke. Can I ask you something?
Luke Yes, of course. What is it?
E Well, it's about my science project. We have to hand it in tomorrow – and I only started it today!
L Oh dear. Why?
E Well, I was ill last week. Remember? And then I had a lot of other homework ... I need more time!
L Talk to Mr Woods, then. Ask for more time.
E But my last project was late too. And Mr Woods was really cross with me! So I don't want to ask for more time.
L You haven't got a choice. You can't finish it before tomorrow, can you?
E Well, if I look for something on the internet ...
L Something to copy? No, I don't think you should do that. Just talk to him – that's my advice.
E I can't. You don't understand!
L What are you doing now?
E I'm looking for science projects on the internet.
- D Alice** Hi, George. How are things?
George Oh, hello, Alice. Hmm. Not too good, really.
A Oh no. What's the matter?
G Well, I've got this problem with my Facebook page. I put a photo on it – it's a photo of me on holiday.

- A** Yes. So what?
G Well, a few people made comments. They weren't very nice comments.
A Oh well. That happens sometimes.
G I was really upset.
A You shouldn't be upset. Just forget about it. People do things like that. It isn't nice, but it happens. Don't let it worry you.
G Should I make a complaint to Facebook?
A No, I don't think you should do that. But you should delete the comments. And maybe take the photo down too.
G OK. I can do that now. Thanks for the advice. But I still feel bad.

Exercise 6 1.04 page 10

- 1 see your 2 just don't know 3 don't sound
4 guess you're 5 ask you 6 that's my
7 this problem 8 don't think

Transcript

See exercise 5.

1D Grammar

Past simple (negative and interrogative)

Exercise 1 page 11

- 1 didn't get 2 didn't win 3 didn't feel 4 didn't spend
5 wasn't 6 didn't give 7 didn't rain 8 couldn't

Exercise 2 page 11

- 2 didn't die 3 didn't begin 4 weren't born
5 didn't say 6 didn't see 7 couldn't 8 wasn't

Exercise 3 page 11

- 1 could / couldn't 2 did / didn't do 3 was / wasn't
4 lived / didn't live 5 made / didn't make
6 chose / didn't choose 7 went / didn't go
8 studied / didn't study

Exercise 4 page 11

- 1 What 2 Who 3 How often 4 Where 5 Which
6 Why 7 when

Exercise 5 page 11

- 1 How much homework did you do last night?
2 Who did you travel to school with today?
3 Where did you meet your best friend?
4 Who was your first English teacher?

Students' own answers

Exercise 6 page 11

- 2 Why did Sam have dinner early
3 Who did Mason go to London with
4 How many Lady Gaga CDs did Grace listen to

1E Word Skills

Adjective endings

Exercise 1 page 12

- 1 tiring 2 amazing 3 astonished 4 embarrassing
5 interesting 6 shocking 7 surprised 8 annoyed

Exercise 2 page 12

- 1 tiring 2 exhausted 3 shocked 4 worried
5 frightening 6 confused 7 bored 8 delighted
9 moving 10 interested 11 astonishing

Exercise 3 page 12

- 1 disgusting 2 moving 3 confused 4 exciting
5 frightened

Exercise 4 page 12

amuse *vb*, amusing, amused *adj.*, amusement *n*.
depress *vb*, depressing, depressed *adj.*, depression *n*.
entertain *vb*, entertaining, entertained *adj.*,
entertainment *n*.
relax *vb*, relaxing, relaxed *adj.*, relaxation *n*.
satisfy *vb*, satisfying, satisfied *adj.*, satisfaction *n*.
Students' own answers

1F Reading

A painless operation

Exercise 1 page 13

- 1 bleed 2 burn 3 cut 4 sprain 5 injure 6 broken

Exercise 2 page 13

- 1 bruise 2 pain 3 hurts 4 hurt 5 slipped, fell over

Exercise 3 page 13

- 1 F 2 F 3 T

Exercise 4 page 13

- A 3 B 1 C 1 D 3 E 2 F 3 G 1 H 3 I 2 J 2

1G Speaking

Narrating events

Exercise 1 page 14

- 2 That sounds terrifying! 3 What a cool thing to do!
4 Really? What a relief! 5 That's amazing!
6 That sounds like a nightmare. 7 Oh no! What a shame!
8 You're kidding! 9 That sounds like fun! 12 How
upsetting!

Exercise 2 page 14

- 1 That sounds like a nightmare! Oh no! What a shame!
You're kidding! How upsetting!
2 That sounds terrifying! What a cool thing to do! That's
amazing! You're kidding! That sounds like fun!
3 That sounds terrifying! What a cool thing to do! That's
amazing! You're kidding! That sounds like fun!
4 That's amazing! You're kidding!
5 Really? What a relief! You're kidding!
6 Really? What a relief! That's amazing! You're kidding!

Exercise 3 page 14

- 1
Who? Alice
Where Alice's house, school, Helen's house
When The last day of the summer holidays, the first day of
school

- 2 raise money for charity – next day school in fancy dress
– joke – noone wearing fancy dress – home to change –
missed lessons – embarrassed – Alice laughed – teacher
cross
3 Helen: embarrassed; Teacher: cross

1H Writing

A description of an event

Exercise 1 page 15

- 1 She often borrows my clothes, but she never owns
up to it.
2 I asked for a seat by the window.
3 The police officer looked at my passport carefully.
4 Are you talking about the World Cup?
5 I found out where my brother hides his diary.
6 Please put back my pen / my pen back when you
borrow it!
7 After his exams, he spent a day in bed just to get
over them.

Exercise 2 page 15

- 1 proud 2 scared 3 upset 4 guilty

Review Unit 1

Exercise 1 page 16

- 1 anxious 2 relieved 3 envious 4 disappointed
5 embarrassed 6 cross

Exercise 2 page 16

- 1 frightened 2 confused 3 bored 4 excited
5 delighted 6 suspicious

Exercise 3 page 16

- 1 take 2 tell 3 have 4 take 5 make
6 give

Exercise 4 page 16

- 1 burned 2 sprained 3 fell over, broke 4 slipped
5 cut 6 hurt

Exercise 5 page 16

- 1 a 2 b 3 c 4 b 5 a

Exercise 6 page 16

- 1 fascinating 2 bored 3 annoying 4 exciting
5 amazed 6 disgusting

Exercise 7 page 17

- 1 told 2 went 3 had 4 visited 5 had 6 bought
7 stole 8 reported 9 wanted 10 spent

Exercise 8 page 17

- 1 Did you go; didn't go; wasn't
2 Did you win; didn't win; didn't expect
3 Did David tell; didn't say; passed; didn't want

Exercise 9 page 17

- 1 a 2 c 3 b 4 c 5 a 6 c 7 b 8 a 9 c 10 b

Exam Skills Trainer 1

Exercise 1 page 18

1 b

Exercise 2 page 18

1 DS 2 F 3 T 4 DS 5 T 6 T

Exercise 4 1.05 page 18

1 B 2 C 3 A 4 B 5 D 6 B

Transcript

- 1 Many students get very stressed about exams, but there are ways to beat that stress. The first thing you should do is to decide on a routine and a timetable for study and relaxation. When you're working, don't be tempted by computer games, or by checking emails and text messages. Look after your health: eat and sleep properly and get regular exercise. What you do after the exam is important too. Don't get stressed about how well you've done. Walk out of the exam room, and move on.
- 2 **Sam** Hello, Amy. What's up? You look sad.
Amy Well, I am. My mum and dad have decided to move to Brighton. They're going to open a gift shop there.
S Brighton? I love Brighton. It's got a fantastic beach, and loads of great shops and cafes.
A Yeah, but I've always lived here, and I've got to go to a new school. I'm going to really miss you, and all my other friends.
S I'm going to miss you too, Amy, but Brighton isn't far. We can visit you.
A Promise?
S Yes, of course! Don't worry.
- 3 Hello and welcome. Today, we're talking about Sarah Powers, who recently won a million pounds on the lottery. Now, what do you think she did with all that money? Did she go on a fantastic holiday or buy a new house? No, she didn't. Sarah gave ALL of the money away to charity. She said she didn't need money – she was happy with her life. So what do you think about that? We want to know your views. Phone us on the usual number and tell us ... (fade)
- 4 **Lucy** Hi, Ben. How was your family party?
Ben Oh, hi, Lucy. Well, it was OK, but ...
L What happened?
B Well, first of all, we were late. The car wouldn't start, and my dad started getting really anxious. In the end we got a taxi.
L That sounds OK.
B Yes, but then they played all this really old music at the party, from the eighties, and ...
L Don't tell me – your mum and dad started dancing!
B Yes! I was so embarrassed!
L I know what you mean. My parents do that too!
B It's horrible, isn't it?
- 5 Can't afford a ticket for Reading Festival this year? We may have the solution. We're looking for young people to come and help us organise one of the best festivals in Britain. There are lots of jobs available, including working on the food stalls, directing traffic in the car park, and picking up rubbish from the site. We pay competitive rates. And even better than that ... you can see all your favourite bands for free! You must be over eighteen, and available on the last weekend in August.

- 6 Good morning, everyone! I hope you're looking forward to the day ahead. I'm afraid the weather's not going to be brilliant. The forecast is for rain and wind, so please make sure you've got your waterproof clothing with you. I recommend waterproof trousers as well as your jacket. Don't forget you will also need to collect some water from the river. I hope you've got your notebooks and pens. There's no need to bring your science project notes from last lesson. You can update those when we get back to school next week.

Exercise 6 page 19

1 to 2 a 3 do 4 about 5 than 6 the 7 at 8 is
9 too 10 for

Unit 2 Adventure

2A Vocabulary

Landscapes

Exercise 1 page 20

1 cliff 2 stream 3 cave 4 waterfall 5 ocean
6 forest 7 mountain 8 lake 9 hill 10 river
11 shore 12 volcano 13 desert 14 valley 15 rocks

Exercise 2 page 20

1 tall mountain 2 icy stream 3 narrow river
4 dark cave 5 shallow lake 6 low waterfall
7 rocky shore 8 deep ocean 9 wide river
10 steep volcano / waterfall

Exercise 3 1.06 page 20

1 waterfall 2 ocean 3 river 4 Lake 5 mountains
6 volcano 7 desert 8 Valley 9 shore 10 Forest

Transcript

- 1 In which country is the highest waterfall in the world?
2 What's the name of the ocean to the east of Africa?
3 What's the name of the river that flows through London?
4 In which country is Lake Baikal?
5 What's the name of the mountains that run along the west coast of South America?
6 In which country is the volcano Vesuvius?
7 What's the name of the desert in southern Africa?
8 In which two continents is the Great Rift Valley?
9 Which famous American city is on the shore of Lake Michigan?
10 In which European country is the Black Forest?

Exercise 4 page 20

1 Venezuela 2 Indian Ocean 3 the Thames 4 Russia
5 the Andes 6 Italy 7 Kalahari 8 Africa and Asia
9 Chicago 10 Germany

2B Grammar

Past continuous

Exercise 1 page 21

1 were having 2 wasn't listening
3 was lying, was eating 4 were smiling, was taking

- 5 were ... arguing 6 was talking 7 was ... chatting
8 wasn't sleeping

Exercise 2 page 21

- 2 Was the sun shining? 3 It wasn't raining.
4 Where was he going? 5 He wasn't wearing a helmet.

Exercise 3 page 21

- 1 was raining 2 was wearing 3 carrying
4 were leaving 5 hurrying 6 wasn't wearing
7 was standing 8 Was ... following

Exercise 4 page 21

- 2 Will and Emma were having a picnic.
3 Kim was reading a magazine.
4 Max and Eve were sunbathing.
5 George and Susan were listening to music.
6 Jay was drinking fruit juice.
7 Leyla was eating an ice cream.
8 Zoe was phoning someone
9 The sun was shining.

2C Listening

Adrenaline junkies

Exercise 1 page 22

- 1 c 2 c 3 b 4 a 5 c

Exercise 2 1.07 page 22

- 1 ages 2 didn't enjoy 3 amazing 4 it isn't cheap

Transcript

I spent ages trying to find the right sport. I played team games like football and volleyball when I was a teenager, but I didn't enjoy them. I prefer to be in control – so I like individual sports. When I was nineteen, I discovered wingsuit flying. It's an amazing feeling, because it really is like being a bird: you can choose which way to fly. I love it! The only problem is, it isn't cheap. For that reason, I can't do it as often as I want to.

Exercise 3 1.08 page 22

Photo A: Speaker 2 **Photo B:** Speaker 3
Photo C: Speaker 1

Transcript

- 1 I started doing it about five years ago. At that time, I didn't know what the word 'creeking' meant! But I was already a fan of kayaking and I suppose I was looking for a new challenge. The first time I saw it, I thought, hey, this doesn't look possible! You can't take a kayak down a waterfall! But actually, it doesn't feel quite as bad when you're doing it because you're in control ... most of the time. And now, I just love creeking. The adrenaline is amazing. I can't go back to ordinary kayaking ... never!

- 2 Free soloing is the most extreme form of climbing because it doesn't use any equipment at all – no ropes, no safety gear, nothing. It's just the climber and the cliff or mountain. I started doing it ten years ago, because I was looking for a physical challenge. It needs a lot more strength than ordinary climbing – you need strong fingers, hands and arms in particular. And of course, it's dangerous sometimes, but I don't think about that. For me, it's all about testing myself, not about risking my life.
- 3 When I first told people I was into volcano boarding, people thought I was joking. That's because most of them didn't know anything at all about the sport. I didn't know anything about it either, until I was in Nicaragua on holiday three years ago. I visited a volcano called Cerro Negro – the name just means 'black hill'. It's a young, active volcano – and the best place in the world for volcano boarding. So I decided to try it. It takes 45-minutes to walk up the volcano. Then just a few minutes to surf down it. It was amazing – really thrilling. But very hot!

Exercise 4 1.08 page 22

- 1 T 2 F 3 T 4 F 5 F 6 F

Transcript

See exercise 4.

2D Grammar

Contrast: past simple and past continuous

Exercise 1 page 23

- 1 wasn't raining 2 were you doing 3 put on, left
4 were making 5 didn't believe 6 was having

Exercise 2 page 23

- 1 saw, was cycling 2 were preparing, started
3 were leaving, arrived 4 were walking, heard
5 didn't eat, were staying 6 drank, wasn't looking
7 dropped, was putting 8 met, was waiting

Exercise 3 page 23

- 2 made 3 was fishing 4 didn't see 5 felt
6 were playing 7 turned 8 was 9 realised
10 was happening 11 was carrying 12 used
13 got 14 looked 15 were bleeding 16 cleaned
17 went 18 were enjoying 19 gave
20 was bleeding 21 went

Exercise 4 page 23

- 2 While I was walking home, it started to snow.
3 She was learning to ski when she broke her leg.
4 As he was making lunch, he suddenly felt ill.
5 She started to laugh when she was telling me about her party.
6 While I was shopping, I lost my wallet.
7 The band were playing their first song when all the lights went out.

2E Word Skills

Word building

Exercise 1 page 24

2 achievement 3 need 4 dream 5 argument
6 failure 7 translation 8 eruption 9 rescue

Exercise 2 page 24

1 circumnavigation 2 attempts 3 preparations
4 entertainment 5 relaxation 6 experiences
7 imaginations 8 development 9 exploration
10 accomplishments 11 employment 12 motivation

Exercise 3 page 24

1 explorer 2 exploration 3 exploration 4 explore
5 *explore* has multiple meanings. 6 exploration

Exercise 4 page 24

1 ski lift 2 skier 3 ski jacket 4 ski slope 5 skis

2F Reading

Staying alive

Exercise 1 page 25

2 tasty 3 stunning 4 bad 5 disgusting 6 hungry
7 tiny 8 good 9 terrifying 10 sad 11 filthy
12 big 13 exhausted

Exercise 2 page 25

awful; huge; starving; exhausted; terrifying

Exercise 3 page 25

1 E 2 B 3 D 4 G 5 F

Exercise 4 page 25

1 F, A 2 T, A 3 T, B 4 T, C 5 F, E

2G Speaking

Photo description

Exercise 1 page 26

1 life jacket 2 rucksack 3 boots 4 helmet 5 rope
6 dinghy 7 paddles 8 safety harness 9 poles

Exercise 2 page 26

1 helmet, safety harness, rope
2 life jacket, helmet, paddles
3 rucksack, boots, poles

Exercise 3 page 26

1 shows 2 look 3 on 4 In 5 as

2H Writing

An invitation

Exercise 1 page 27

1 kite surfing 2 kayaking 3 rock climbing
4 mountain biking 5 quad biking 6 abseiling
7 orienteering 8 jet-skiing

Exercise 2 page 27

1 p.m. 2 e.g. 3 RSVP 4 PS 5 etc.

Exercise 3 page 27

2 I am, I'm 3 Do not, don't 4 I cannot, I can't

Review Unit 2

Exercise 1 page 28

1 desert 2 mountain 3 river 4 cave 5 volcano
6 hill 7 forest 8 waterfall

Exercise 2 page 28

1 deep 2 wide 3 narrow 4 tall 5 dark
6 steep 7 shallow 8 icy

Exercise 3 page 28

1 boots 2 helmet 3 life jacket 4 paddles
5 safety harness
Mountain biking helmet Kayaking helmet, life jacket,
paddles Orienteering boots Rock climbing helmet, safety
harness

Exercise 4 page 28

1 tiny 2 exhausted 3 terrifying 4 starving
5 tragic 6 filthy 7 stunning 8 huge

Exercise 5 page 28

1 completion 2 experience 3 achievements
4 needs 5 argument 6 thunder 7 risk
8 motivation 9 preparation 10 accomplishments

Exercise 6 page 29

1 Were you talking; was trying; wasn't talking; was taking
2 Were you playing; were eating; was shining; was
blowing; was raining
3 Were you sleeping; wasn't sleeping; was trying
4 was Kate doing; was answering

Exercise 7 page 29

1 set out 2 was shining 3 were walking 4 stopped
5 Did you hear 6 didn't hear 7 wasn't shining

Exercise 8 page 29

1 were eating 2 didn't come 3 didn't sleep
well 4 about going 5 looks as if

Unit 3 On screen

3A Vocabulary

Film and TV programmes

Exercise 1 page 30

1 game show 2 documentary 3 romantic comedy
4 reality show 5 period drama 6 action film
7 chat show 8 thriller 9 war film 10 soap opera
11 sitcom

Exercise 2 page 30

1 science fiction film 2 fantasy film 3 western
4 horror film 5 musical 6 news bulletin
7 animation 8 comedy

Exercise 3 page 30

Only TV: game show; reality show; soap opera; sitcom; news bulletin

TV or film: documentary; romantic comedy; period drama; action film; thriller; science fiction film; fantasy film; western; horror film; musical; animation

Exercise 4 page 30

2 exciting 3 funny 4 gripping 5 confusing
6 convincing 7 embarrassing 8 imaginative
9 spectacular 10 unrealistic 11 scary
12 interesting 13 moving 14 violent

positive: exciting funny gripping convincing
imaginative spectacular interesting moving

negative: boring confusing embarrassing
unrealistic scary violent

Exercise 5 1.09 page 30

1 a 2 a

Transcript

Anna Did you enjoy that film, David?

David Yes, I did. The characters are often a bit boring in action films, but in this one, I thought they were very interesting.

A I agree. And weren't the special effects great? They were really spectacular.

D Yes, but rather unrealistic, I thought.

A But they often are, aren't they? That's why they're special effects!

D And the soundtrack was very interesting.

A Yes, it was. It added to the suspense, didn't it? Some of the scenes were very scary.

D Yes, and very violent. I couldn't look sometimes.

A Yes, there was too much violence. But overall, it was great.

D Yes, it was.

Exercise 6 1.09 page 30

1 interesting 2 interesting 3 spectacular
4 unrealistic 5 interesting 6 interesting 7 scary
8 violent

Transcript

See exercise 5.

3B Grammar

Quantity

Exercise 1 page 31

1 some 2 some 3 any 4 Some 5 any
6 any 7 any

Exercise 2 page 31

1 some 2 any 3 some 4 some 5 any
6 some 7 some 8 any 9 any

Exercise 3 page 31

1 a few 2 a little 3 a few 4 a few 5 a little
6 a little 7 a few

Exercise 4 page 31

1 How many 2 How much 3 How many
4 How much 5 How many

Exercise 6 page 31

1 How many 2 How much 3 a few 4 many
5 a little 6 some 7 any 8 much

3C Listening

Advertising

Exercise 1 page 32

1 C 2 A 3 D 4 B 5 E 6 F

Exercise 2 page 32

A b B a C b D c

Exercise 3 1.10 page 32

1 fast food 2 cosmetics 3 sports clothes 4 a car

Transcript

1 **Man** Are you hungry? I could make some lunch.

Woman Starving. What have we got?

M Er ... we've got some bananas. And a packet of rice. And a tomato. Ooh – and some cheese, but it looks a bit old. How does that sound? Hey! Where are you going?

W Back soon!

Narrator When you're hungry – and you don't fancy rice with bananas and cheese – there's always another option.

W Two portions of chicken with fries, please. And a side order of garlic bread.

Server Certainly, madam. To eat here?

W No, take away.

N The Chicken Shack – for delicious American-style chicken. There's one near you.

2 Colours that match your natural beauty. More than a hundred different shades. A style to match your outfit, whatever you're wearing. Elegant and stylish. Natural products for eyes, lips and face. Just ask for Pour Elle – and you're looking beautiful.

3 **Narrator** What matters in your life?

Man Being fit and healthy.

Woman Feeling good.

Boy Looking cool!

Narrator Whatever matters, make East Coast fashion a part of your life, whether you're playing football with friends, running a race or just chilling. Life is a game. Play it well. Wear East Coast casuals. In department stores now.

4 **Man** Hi Sarah. Can I give you a lift?

Woman Yes, thanks. Oh ... is this new?

M Yes. I got it yesterday!

W Nice!

M It's great to drive. I love it.

W Yes, really smooth and comfortable.

M It's a two litre engine. Six cylinders.

W Can I ask you something?

M Yes, sure.

W Can I have a go at driving it?

M Sure. Why not?

Narrator The new XK 44 – on the road from £19,995.

Exercise 4 1.10 page 32

race, elegant, engine, hungry

Transcript

See exercise 3.

Exercise 5 page 32

1 D 2 C 3 A 4 B 5 E

Exercise 6 1.11 page 32

Transcript

- 1 **Man** There's a great film on tonight at the Picture House.
Woman Really? What kind of film?
M It's a comedy.
W I'm really tired. I think I need an evening at home.
M Oh, come on. I don't want to go by myself.
W Well, ask a friend.
M But I want to go with you! We hardly ever go out. I really think you should make more effort!
W I'm sorry – but I'm always so tired. I work hard, you know!
M I know, but ... come on. It's Friday night!
W Oh, I don't know. Can I think about it?
M OK.
- 2 **Boy** Did I tell you what happened to me when I was out with Molly?
Girl No, you didn't.
B It was really embarrassing – but it made us laugh afterwards.
G Go on, tell me!
B Well, we were at the cinema. The film was starting when Molly stood up and whispered something about going to buy popcorn. So she went.
G And then what happened?
B Well, a few moments later, she came back and sat down. I thought, 'That was quick,' but I didn't say anything. I was really concentrating on the film.
G OK ...
B So I helped myself to some of the popcorn. She was holding a big box of it in her hand. And a woman's voice said, 'Hey! That's mine!'
G Oh no!
B Yes! I turned around ... and it wasn't Molly! It was another woman who was sitting in her place.
G How embarrassing!
B I know. Then Molly got back and we had to explain to this woman, but she was already upset about the popcorn ...
G That's so funny!
- 3 **Boy** What's on next?
Girl There's a talent show starting in five minutes.
B No thanks! I really don't like talent shows.
G Me neither. They're so boring, aren't they?
B Yes. Terrible. What else is on?
G There's a new sitcom on a bit later.
B No, sitcoms aren't my thing. They're never really funny.
G I don't think you're right about sitcoms. Some of the American shows are really clever.
B Clever? You're joking. They're all the same ... and the laughter isn't real, it's all recorded.
G No, it isn't. There's usually a real audience.
B I don't think so. Not for most of the shows.
G Yes, there is. I saw a programme about it once ...

4 **Woman** Can I help you?

- Man** Yes, I want to return this DVD.
W Have you watched it?
M Yes, I have.
W Well, I'm sorry. You can't return it.
M But there's a problem with it. It keeps jumping. And some of the scenes don't play at all.
W There's nothing I can do. It's our policy.
M It's just not good enough. You sold me a DVD which doesn't work. I don't care what your policy is! Where's the manager?
W She's in her office. Do you want me to call her?
M Yes, I do!

Exercise 7 1.11 page 32

Dialogue 1: C Dialogue 2: E

Dialogue 3: A Dialogue 4: B

The extra sentence: D

Transcript

See exercise 6.

3D Grammar

must, mustn't and needn't / don't have to

Exercise 1 page 33

- 1 must 2 have to 3 mustn't 4 don't have to
5 have to 6 must 7 needn't 8 mustn't

Exercise 2 page 33

- 1 doesn't have to 2 mustn't 3 mustn't
4 doesn't have to 5 mustn't 6 mustn't
7 don't have to, mustn't

Exercise 3 page 33

- 1 don't have to / needn't 2 mustn't 3 must / have to
4 must / have to 5 mustn't

Exercise 4 page 33

- 1 must 2 must 3 have to 4 must 5 have to

3E Word Skills

Negative adjective prefixes

Exercise 1 page 34

- 1 dissatisfied 2 untidy 3 incorrect 4 illegible
5 invisible 6 unkind 7 unbelievable 8 impolite

Exercise 2 page 34

- 2 unfair 3 impossible 4 certain 5 unacceptable
6 dishonest 7 loyal 8 legal 9 unlikely
10 irresponsible 11 impatient 12 safe

Exercise 3 page 34

- 1 illegal 2 impolite 3 impatient 4 possible
5 unsafe 6 honest

Exercise 4 page 34

- 1 kind 2 thoughtful 3 yes 4 considerate

Exercise 5 page 34

(Possible answers)

- 1 enjoyable, unpleasant 2 lucky, unfortunate
3 polite, discourteous 4 almost certain, improbable

3F Reading

Disaster alert!

Exercise 1 page 35

- 1 take part in 2 provide 3 did 4 use 5 have
6 cause 7 express 8 make 9 get

Exercise 2 page 35

- 1 She's a scientist. 2 Japan 3 earthquake

Exercise 3 page 35

- 1 c 2 b 3 b 4 d

3G Speaking

Reaching an agreement

Exercise 1 page 36

Expressing likes and dislikes: 1 I adore / I can't stand;
5 I'm / I'm not a big fan of ...; 7 I'm / I'm not keen on ...

Expressing a preference: 3 I think ... will be better / more fun, etc.; 4 I'd rather / I'd prefer (to) ... 5 I quite fancy / I don't really fancy ...

Reaching an agreement: 2 That's agreed, then; 6 OK, I agree; 8 Let's / Shall we settle on ... 9 That's a great idea.

Exercise 2 1.12 page 36

The student chose the second game, the driving game.

Transcript

Student So, which video game shall we play? I adore puzzle games.

Teacher Really? I can't stand them. I think they're really boring. I'd prefer to play the driving game.

S Well, I'm not a big fan of driving games, but this one looks quite fun, I suppose.

T Let's settle on the driving game, then.

S OK. Where shall we play it? At my house or at yours?

T You can come to my house if you like.

S I'd rather play it at my house. We've just bought a new TV. It's really big!

T OK, that's agreed then. Shall we invite anyone else?

S Let's ask Tom if he wants to play.

T I think Tom is away this weekend with his parents.

S Oh, well, what about Sally, then?

T Yes, that's a great idea. I think she really likes driving games.

Exercise 3 1.12 page 36

Students should tick: 1, 2, 4, 5, 8, 9

Transcript

See exercise 2.

3H Writing

An informal letter

Exercise 1 page 37

- 1 go for a bike ride 2 go shopping
3 meet friends in town 4 play basketball
5 have a coffee 6 listen to music 7 play table tennis

Exercise 2 page 37

(Possible answers)

- 1 Why don't we play table tennis?
2 Do you fancy having a coffee?
3 How about going for a bike ride?
4 Would you like to meet in town?

Exercise 3 page 37

- 1 Dear 2 are 3 now 4 soon 5 best

Exercise 4 page 37

scenes, length

Review Unit 3

Exercise 1 page 38

- 1 documentary 2 fantasy film 3 horror film
4 musical 5 action film 6 animations 7 talent show
8 news bulletin 9 chat show 10 game show
11 romantic comedy 12 period drama

Exercise 2 page 38

- 1 a 2 b 3 a 4 c 5 b 6 b 7 b

Exercise 3 page 38

- 1 actors 2 characters 3 plot 4 script
5 scenes 6 ending 7 acting 8 soundtrack

Exercise 4 page 38

- 1 dishonest 2 illegible 3 impolite 4 irresponsible
5 unsafe 6 dissatisfied 7 invisible 8 inappropriate
9 untidy

Exercise 5 page 39

- 1 How many 2 many / a lot of 3 a few
4 How much 5 much 6 many
7 How much 8 a little 9 not much
10 a lot of / a little 11 Not many 12 a few 13 much
14 How much 15 a few 16 much

Exercise 6 page 39

- 2 You don't have to come 3 You mustn't enter
4 I must finish 5 You mustn't criticise 6 I don't have to get up
7 she has to audition 8 You mustn't watch

Exercise 7 page 39

- 1 spectacular 2 imaginative 3 convincing 4 unlikely
5 violence 6 impossible

Exam Skills Trainer 2

Exercise 1 page 40

I was born in Nottinghamshire and was the third of five sons. My father was not a rich man, but he was able to send me to Cambridge University, where I studied for

three years. **When I left college, I continued my studies and became a doctor.** But I always wanted to travel, and so I made several voyages as a ship's doctor. When I married my wife Mary, however, I planned to stay at home for a while. But after a few years I discovered I was not earning enough money from my patients. **I decided to go to sea again, and this time I joined a ship sailing to the islands in the South Pacific Ocean.** We started our journey from Bristol on May 4th, 1699.

Exercise 2 page 40

1 H 2 A 3 C 4 D 5 E 6 B 7 G

Exercise 3 page 40

B

Exercise 4 1.13 page 40

1 C 2 B 3 A 4 E 5 D

Transcript

- 1 Hello and welcome to *The Entertainer* – the show that gives you all the best festival, film and sports news. I'd like to start by telling you about an exciting new project in Oxford. British film-makers are looking for young people aged 16-18 to work as extras in a crowd scene for a new film. You don't need acting experience, but you do need to be available in August. More details at the end of the programme.
- 2 Can I have your attention please? Could all swimmers taking part in the under-fifteens swimming races please go to reception? We need to know you're here, so please sign in with your coaches. I'd also like to take this opportunity to thank all of you for coming. It's going to be a great day!
- 3 Hello, and thank you for asking me to your school. I'm going to start by telling you how I became interested in film. I've always loved the cinema, and at first I thought I wanted to be an actor. Then I became more interested in what the actors were wearing. I loved historical films, but also science fiction – all those amazing alien costumes. I was good at art at school, and I knew that costume design was what I wanted to study when I left school.
- 4 This week's topic is superheroes. It all began in the late 1930s, when Superman appeared as the first comic-book character with super powers. Many amazing characters followed, including Wonder Woman, who was the first female superhero. In the 1950s, television arrived, and superheroes became less popular. But then, in the 1960s, Batman appeared in a TV series – and everybody loved superheroes again! Today, superheroes are more popular than ever, with huge blockbusters like *Iron Man* and *The Avengers*.
- 5 DJ Sam is letting me talk for a moment on this great show. I'm Marty and I formed a rock band, 'The Thunder' last year with four other guys from Year 9. You've probably heard us on this show a couple of times and also heard us practising after school! We're pretty loud! Unfortunately Harley, our drummer, moved to Scotland with his family, so now we're looking for a replacement. Please email me if you play drums and you're interested. DJ Sam will give the address later.

Exercise 5 page 40

1 B 2 B 3 C 4 C 5 A 6 C 7 B 8 A 9 B 10 C

Exercise 7 page 41

- 1 beautiful scenery
- 2 Mark pulled me back, got too near edge of cliff
- 3 exciting, memorable
- 4 plan to go again soon

Unit 4 Our planet

4A Vocabulary

Weather

Exercise 1 page 42

- 2 cloudy 3 snowy 4 frosty 5 foggy 6 icy
- 7 stormy 8 windy 9 sunny 10 rainy

Exercise 2 page 42

- 2 cloud 3 snow 4 frost 5 fog 6 ice 7 storm
- 8 wind 9 sun 10 rain

Exercise 3 page 42

- 1 thunderstorm 2 storm clouds 3 blow
- 4 raindrops 5 flashes 6 claps 7 sunshine

Exercise 4 page 42

- 1 sweltering 2 hot 3 warm 4 mild 5 cool
- 6 cold 7 freezing

Exercise 5 page 42

- 3 It's minus fifteen.
- 4 It's fourteen degrees (Celsius).
- 5 It's minus seven.
- 6 It's thirty-two degrees (Celsius).

Exercise 6 1.14 page 42

- 1 b sunny 2 a fog b ice 3 a cloudy b thundery
- 4 a frost b windy, snowy

Transcript

- 1 Yesterday morning the weather was terrible. It started to rain just after breakfast and it only stopped at about one o'clock. But then the sun came out and we spent the afternoon sunbathing in the park.
- 2 When we drove to school this morning, it was really foggy. It was so thick that we could only see about 20 metres ahead. Not only that, the road was really icy and slippery because the temperature in the night was about minus ten degrees Celsius. The bus driver had to drive really slowly and carefully.
- 3 It was school sports day yesterday. Unfortunately the sky was quite cloudy for most of the day and the sun didn't shine at all. It was quite mild and we heard some crashes of thunder, but luckily it didn't rain.
- 4 I went to play football in the park with some friends on Sunday morning. It was a lovely clear day but it was freezing cold and very frosty. There wasn't any snow but the grass was completely white! Then in the afternoon the weather changed. The wind started to blow and it snowed quite heavily. By the evening there was about 10 centimetres of snow on the ground.

4B Grammar

Comparison

Exercise 1 page 43

- 1 taller 2 larger 3 hotter 4 earlier
5 more powerful 6 more spectacular 7 better
8 worse 9 further 10 fewer 11 more 12 less

Exercise 2 page 43

- 1 heavier 2 bigger 3 closer 4 further 5 colder
6 brighter 7 rarer 8 fewer 9 more dangerous
10 more likely

Exercise 3 page 43

- 2 London is as warm as Edinburgh.
3 London isn't as cloudy as Edinburgh.
4 Edinburgh isn't as bright as London.
5 London isn't as wet as Edinburgh.
6 London is as windy as Edinburgh.
7 Edinburgh isn't as dry as London.

Exercise 4 page 43

- 1 as 2 much, than 3 more, much 4 as, as
5 than 6 more, than, as, much

4C Listening

Eyewitness

Exercise 1 page 44

- 1 earthquake 2 volcanic eruption 3 flood
4 avalanche 5 famine 6 tsunami 7 drought
8 forest fire 9 epidemic 10 mudslide

Exercise 2 page 44

Photos: 1 volcanic eruption, 2 drought

Exercise 3 1.15 page 44

Dialogue 1:

- 1 They are in Mrs Dennington's home. (She says 'Come in!')
2 A flood caused the damage. (twenty centimetres deep in my living room!)

Dialogue 2:

- 3 They're discussing a drought. (They need rain!; it didn't rain at all; The ground is so dry.)
4 It is early morning; they are having breakfast. ((the shop) isn't open yet; toast and jam is just fine.)

Transcript

- 1 **Man** Hi. Mrs Dennington?
Woman Yes, that's me. Are you Mr Jones?
M Yes.
W Come in, come in.
M Hmm. I can see straight away there's a lot of damage here!
W Yes. It was about twenty centimetres deep in my living room!
M So, what would you like me to look at?
W Well, this wall by the kitchen. The water made a few holes near the bottom.
M Oh yes, I see.
W Is it safe?

- M** Safe? Yes, perfectly safe. You don't need to worry about that. But it doesn't look very good!
W So can you fix it?
M Yes, of course. I suppose it's about two days' work, so ... let's say £300.
W That's fine. When can you do it?
2 **Man** Did you read this article?
Woman Which one?
M About California. They need rain!
W Really?
M Yes. It says here that in some places it didn't rain at all during the whole winter! The ground is so dry. Look at this photo.
W That's amazing.
M What are you having for breakfast?
W Just toast and jam. Do you want a piece?
M Hmm. No, I fancy eggs.
W We haven't got any eggs.
M I can buy some at the shop next door.
W It isn't open yet. You need to wait about twenty minutes.
M Forget that, toast and jam is fine.

Exercise 4 1.16 page 44

- 1 famine 2 tsunami 3 epidemic 4 volcanic eruption

Transcript

- 1 **Woman** Hello.
Man Hi.
W I'm collecting for emergency relief. Can you spare a few coins?
M Actually, I'm in a bit of a hurry. I need to get to the supermarket before it closes.
W Which supermarket? The one in the shopping centre?
M Yes ...
W Oh, you're fine. That's just round the corner. And it doesn't close until 8 o'clock. You've got ages!
M Right ... OK. So, what's this charity?
W We're collecting money for food packages to send to Somalia. The situation there is terrible: more than a million people have got nothing to eat. These photos show what's happening there and how food packages are helping. Maybe if you can spare a minute ...
M Yes, yes. It looks terrible. I've got some money in my pocket ... hold on.
W Anything you can spare ...
M Here.
W Thank you!
2 I was in Japan when it happened, but not near that part of the coast. In fact, I was in Tokyo. I was working there for a few days. While we were having a meeting, somebody heard the news or saw it online. And then everyone was talking about it – in Japanese, of course. I didn't know what was happening because my Japanese isn't very good. I had lessons for a while but I found it really difficult! Anyway, I knew something was wrong. I could tell that from their faces and from their voices when they talked. After a few minutes, somebody explained to me in English what was happening. Later I saw it all on TV, how that enormous wave came in and destroyed everything on the coast. It was shocking.
3 I took a gap year at the end of my university course. I studied medicine, but I didn't want to be a doctor – my interest was in research. I wanted to be a scientist.

Anyway, for my gap year, I went to Cameroon in Central Africa. I got a job helping a medical charity and stayed for the whole year. Basically, I worked as a doctor's assistant in one of their medical centres. We were really busy because that year, there were a lot of cases of Yellow Fever. It was spreading fast, and people were coming to the medical centre every day with the disease. It took ten months to get it under control. After that, I changed my plan – I didn't want to be a scientist after all. So I went back to the UK and finished my training to become a hospital doctor. That took two years. Now I'm looking for a job – and I'd love to go back to Africa.

4 **Woman** Look out of the window. What a great view!

Man Yes, it is. Amazing. Look at those trees – and that mountain in the background.

W It's a volcano, I think.

M Is it? Yes, maybe. I'm not sure.

W We can ask.

Bell boy Here are your suitcases, madam.

M Thanks very much! Can I ask you a question?

BB Yes, of course.

W Is that a volcano or just a mountain?

BB It's a volcano: Mount Bagana. But don't worry – the last time we all had to leave the hotel was five years ago.

M Only five years? So, it's an active volcano?

BB Yes, active. But it's quiet now.

W For the moment ...

BB Yes, for the moment.

Exercise 5  1.16 **page 44**

1 b 2 b 3 a 4 c

Transcript

See exercise 4.

4D Grammar

Superlative adjectives, *too* and *enough*

Exercise 1 **page 45**

1 highest, a 2 furthest, c 3 deepest, c
4 sunniest, b 5 most polluted, c 6 most common, a
7 longest, c 8 largest, b 9 driest, a

Exercise 2 **page 45**

1 largest, in 2 most dangerous, in 3 worst, of
4 hottest, of 5 most expensive, in

Exercise 3 **page 45**

2 We're not old enough to go on holiday alone.
3 This bed isn't soft enough.
4 This film is too boring.
5 It's too cold to go to the beach.
6 His family weren't rich enough to go on holiday.

Exercise 4 **page 45**

1 latest 2 too close 3 richest 4 lucky enough
5 too old 6 too ill 7 best 8 most helpful
9 biggest 10 most spectacular 11 difficult enough
12 most likely 13 too early 14 too dry
15 most probable

4E Word Skills

Phrasal verbs

Exercise 1 **page 46**

fossil fuels global warming greenhouse gases
ice caps rainforest renewable energy sea level
surface temperature

Exercise 2 **page 46**

1 off, T 2 down, F 3 up, T 4 out, F 5 down, F
6 on, T 7 up with, F 8 out, T

Exercise 3 **page 46**

1 come up with 2 give up 3 carry on 4 look after
5 use up 6 go up 7 put off 8 set off

4F Reading

Survival story

Exercise 1 **page 47**

1 approaching 2 took off, landed 3 reached
4 heading 5 spin

Exercise 2 **page 47**

1 a tornado 2 at home 3 at school 4 a bathroom
5 in a cupboard under the stairs 6 twenty-four

Exercise 3 **page 47**

1 D 2 B 3 G 4 I 5 A 6 C 7 H 8 E

4G Speaking

Photo comparison

Exercise 1 **page 48**

1 photos 2 contrast ✓ 3 both 4 second ✓
5 obvious ✓ 6 theme 7 first ✓ 8 Unlike ✓ 9 can

Exercise 2 **page 48**

1 shows 2 country 3 must 4 see 5 fun
6 jumping 7 throwing 8 wearing 9 children
10 Judging 11 enjoying

4H Writing

An article

Exercise 1 **page 49**

1 burn, gives 2 appears, comes 3 happens, causes
4 forms, call 5 eat, makes 6 happen, rains

Exercise 2 **page 49**

The second paragraph should begin at B.

Exercise 3 **page 49**

(*Phrases used in the model text)

A In my opinion, ... ; To be honest, ...

B *Having said that, ... ; On the other hand, ...

C *However, ... ; Nevertheless, ...

D Moreover, ... ; *What is more, ...

Also in model text: Furthermore, ... ; I do not think ...

Review Unit 4

Exercise 1 page 50

- 1 cloudy 2 snowflake 3 frost 4 showery 5 shines
6 misty 7 crash / clap 8 wind 9 hail 10 fog 11 ice

Exercise 2 page 50

- 1 freezing 2 mild 3 sweltering 4 cool 5 cold 6 hot

Exercise 3 page 50

- 1 b 2 a 3 c 4 a 5 c 6 b

Exercise 4 page 48

- 1 took off 2 headed 3 landed 4 approached
5 spun 6 reach

Exercise 5 page 50

- 1 road sign 2 billboard 3 lamp post
4 road works 5 bus stop 6 pavement

Exercise 6 page 50

- 1 look after 2 give up 3 put off 4 come up with
5 use up 6 carry on 7 close down 8 wake up to

Exercise 7 page 51

- 2 The Atlantic Ocean is stormier than the Mediterranean.
3 Hawaii is as beautiful as Tahiti.
4 Manchester isn't as big as London.
5 Are earthquakes as dangerous as mudslides?
6 Hailstorms are more frequent than tornadoes.
7 Is Rome as hot as Cairo?
8 Storms aren't as scary as hurricanes.
9 Are hailstones bigger than snowflakes?
10 London isn't as sunny as Madrid.

Exercise 8 page 51

- 1 the worst 2 the most difficult 3 the deepest
4 the most destructive 5 the best 6 the hardest
7 the most complicated 8 the silliest 9 the furthest

Exercise 9 page 51

- 1 the 2 too 3 enough 4 than 5 out

Unit 5 Ambition

5A Vocabulary

Jobs

Exercise 1 page 52

- 1 dentist 2 programmer 3 pilot 4 farmer
5 hairdresser 6 paramedic 7 sports coach
8 receptionist 9 engineer 10 solicitor 11 architect
12 travel agent 13 cleaner 14 waiter

Secret job: sales assistant

Exercise 2 page 52

- 1 travel a lot 2 be on your feet 3 serve customers
4 work alone / indoors / outdoors 5 wear a uniform
6 deal with the public 7 be part of a team
8 work nine-to-five 9 work long hours
10 make phone calls 11 answer the phone
12 work with children 13 earn a lot 14 use a computer

Exercise 3 page 52

- 2 badly paid 3 creative 4 repetitive 5 rewarding
6 stressful 7 tiring 8 varied 9 well paid

Positive: creative, rewarding, varied, well paid,

Negative: badly paid, repetitive, stressful, tiring

Exercise 4 1.17 page 52

- 1 receptionist; varied, tiring
2 architect; creative, well-paid
3 programmer; challenging, rewarding

Transcript

- 1 I work as a receptionist in a hotel. The job is OK. There are lots of different things I have to do, like deal with the public, check guests in and out, answer the phone, use a computer, and so on. So every day is different. The problem is, I have to work long hours, sometimes at night, so I'm absolutely exhausted when I go home.
- 2 I'm an architect. I finished college last year and this is my first job. I love designing houses, creating something beautiful for people. I love working in a team and the other people in the office are great. But we all work very long hours. Luckily, I get quite a lot of money so it's worth it!
- 3 I'm a programmer. I work for a software company in London. I love my job. I often have to solve quite challenging problems, which is difficult and takes a lot of time, but I really enjoy it. I love the feeling at the end of the day when I have solved a really challenging problem.

5B Grammar

will and going to

Exercise 1 page 53

- 1 a, 'll carry, 2 b, won't be 3 e, won't lose
4 c, 'll help 5 d, 'll have

Exercise 2 page 53

- 1 will 2 's going to 3 isn't going to
4 's going to 5 will 6 's going to

Exercise 3 page 53

- 1 's going to 2 's going to 3 aren't going to
4 's going to 5 isn't going to

Exercise 4 page 53

- 1 'll text 2 'm going to buy 3 'll have
4 'm going to visit 5 'll close 6 'm going to sleep

5C Listening

Changing jobs

Exercise 1 page 54

- 1 gardener 2 estate agent 3 surfing instructor
4 pizza delivery man / woman 5 photographer
6 locksmith 7 police officer 8 stunt performer
9 video game developer 10 builder 11 journalist

Exercise 2 page 54

- 1 as I see it 2 such as 3 although 4 in spite of this
5 that's because 6 What is more

Exercise 3 page 54

1 b 2 a 3 b 4 a 5 b

Exercise 4 1.18 page 54

a She went to college.

Transcript

Host Today in our series about women in unusual jobs, I'm talking to Sally Stone. Hello, Sally.

Sally Hello.

H So what made you get a job in transport?

S I wasn't sure what to do when I left school, so I went to college and trained as a hairdresser. But I decided it wasn't for me. It's badly paid and I wanted something more challenging. So I left college without completing the course.

H Were your parents disappointed?

S No, not at all! In fact, Dad said, why don't you come and work with me? He has a transport company. And I thought, why not? It was the easiest thing to do, really.

H You need a special licence to drive big lorries, don't you? Was it difficult to pass the driving test?

S Lots of people fail, but I passed first time.

H What was it like, when you drove for the first time on your own?

S It was a bit scary but I soon got used to it.

H What do you like about the job?

S I love travelling around and seeing different places. I like being on my own for long periods of time. It's much more rewarding than a nine-to-five job, I think.

H How do men react when they see a woman behind the wheel?

S They often stare, especially when I'm sitting in a traffic jam. I think they can't quite believe what they're seeing.

H Only one in 200 lorry drivers is a woman. Why aren't there more, do you think?

S I don't know. But it's a pity, because women are very good at it.

H How do you mean?

S Well, you need to drive carefully and safely, and not too fast. You need to be patient and not get angry with other drivers. In my view women are usually better at all those things than men!

H But male lorry drivers drive carefully and safely too.

S Of course they do. I'm not saying that male drivers are less safe, of course. It's just that they aren't any better than women at what they do.

H Thank you, Sally, for talking to us today.

Exercise 5 1.18 page 54

1 F 2 F 3 T 4 T 5 T 6 F

Transcript

See exercise 4.

5D Grammar

First conditional

Exercise 1 page 55

- 1 b, our teacher won't be happy.
- 2 c, if her new business starts doing well.
- 3 d, if he wakes up early enough.
- 4 f, she'll get a part-time job.
- 5 a, he'll apply for a place at university.
- 6 e, my parents will give me a reward.

Exercise 2 page 55

- 1 don't get, 'll be 2 aren't, 'll go 3 won't take, help
- 4 won't give, don't show 5 rings, will you answer
- 6 is, 'll be 7 will you do, don't find 8 buy, will close
- 9 'll find, keep 10 is, 'll go

Exercise 3 page 55

- 1 'll fail 2 'll see 3 'll invite 4 invites
- 5 'll sleep 6 won't do 7 don't do 8 'll fail

Exercise 4 page 55

... spend all my money, I'll have to stay in on Friday night.
If I have to stay in, I won't see Connor.
If I don't see Connor, he won't invite me to the barbecue.
If he doesn't invite me to the barbecue, I won't see his sister again!

5E Word Skills

Prefixes

Exercise 1 page 56

- 1 multi 2 sub 3 under 4 ex 5 micro 6 over

Exercise 2 page 56

- 1 semi 2 mis 3 co 4 mini 5 re 6 post 7 multi
- 8 over

Exercise 3 page 56

- 2 underperformed 3 ex-school friend 4 post-war
- 5 mistyped 6 resold 7 co-wrote

Exercise 4 page 56

indoors: hairdresser, programmer, receptionist

activities: answer the phone, serve customers

outdoors: gardener, lorry driver, paramedic

describing: badly-paid, repetitive, tiring, well-paid

5F Reading

The worst jobs in the world?

Exercise 1 page 57

- 1 a job 2 an advertisement 3 an application
- 4 a job 5 a team 6 a degree 7 the job 8 the day

Exercise 2 page 57

- 1 A 2 C 3 B

Exercise 3 page 57

1 sewers 2 light 3 fishing boat 4 job 5 the internet 6 long hours

5G Speaking**Choosing a job****Exercise 1** page 58

1 patient 2 good at communicating 3 physically fit
4 honest 5 friendly 6 enthusiastic 7 flexible
8 reliable

Exercise 3 1.19 page 58
Gardener**Transcript**

Examiner So, I understand you're looking for a part-time job. Is that right?

Candidate Yes, that's right.

E Well, we have two jobs available at the moment. What do you think of this first one? They're looking for a part-time waiter. Does that appeal to you?

C Well, I quite like the idea of working in a busy café. But the hours aren't quite right for me. I know it's only four hours a day. However, it's at the end of the day when I am already tired.

E Oh, OK. You're a morning person! Well, what about this other job: gardener.

C I like the sound of that. I enjoy working outside, even though the weather is often bad. I find gardens very relaxing.

E And what about the hours? Are you happy with those?

C Yes, I am. Although the hours are quite long, they're all at the weekend.

T OK. So you're choosing this job – the gardener.

C That's right. I'm sure a café is an interesting place to work. The money is slightly better too. Nevertheless, I'm sure the other job is right for me.

Exercise 4 1.19 page 58

1 However 2 even though 3 Although
4 Nevertheless

Transcript

See exercise 3.

5H Writing**An application letter****Exercise 1** page 59

1 B 2 F 3 C 4 D 5 E 6 A

Exercise 2 page 59

1 d 2 a 3 c 4 f 5 b 6 e

Exercise 3 page 59

1 receptionist 2 on a website 3 languages
4 waiter 5 friendly 6 reliable
7 CV 8 1 July

Review Unit 5**Exercise 1** page 60

1 architect 2 receptionist 3 cleaner 4 sales assistant
5 pilot 6 sports coach 7 paramedic 8 dentist
9 travel agent

Exercise 2 page 60

1 stressful 2 badly-paid 3 tiring 4 repetitive
5 rewarding 6 creative 7 well-paid

Exercise 3 page 60

1 travel, earn 2 answer, deal 3 wear, work
4 on my feet, earn

Exercise 4 page 60

1 estate agent 2 builder 3 journalist
4 groundskeeper 5 stunt performer 6 photographer
7 police officer 8 video game developer
9 pizza delivery man / woman

Exercise 5 page 60

1 looking for 2 noticed 3 sent in 4 offer 5 join
6 take 7 have

Exercise 6 page 61

1 ex-husband 2 co-workers 3 mini-bus
4 microprocessor 5 misinterpret 6 multitalented
7 redo 8 overwork

Exercise 7 page 61

1 is going to rain 2 will answer 3 am going to travel
4 will regret 5 will text 6 am going to tell

Exercise 8 page 61

1 I will be so happy if I get the job.
2 If it's badly paid, I won't take the job.
3 If he has to move to London, will he accept the job?
4 You will have your own office if you get a promotion.
5 If your parents give you some money, will you buy a house?
6 She'll find a better job if she leaves the company.

Exercise 9 page 61

1 a 2 c 3 b 4 a 5 c

Exam Skills Trainer 3**Exercise 1** page 62

(Possible answer) How do wildfires start?

Exercise 2 page 62

1 E 2 D 3 C 4 F

Exercise 3 page 62

1 an ordinal number 2 a month 3 a place / an adverb
4 a noun / an object 5 a name 6 a noun / an object
7 a (phone) number 8 a place

Exercise 4 1.20 page 62

1 final 2 March 3 abroad 4 universities
5 Mr Williams 6 part-time job 7 07890 655 234
8 the school hall



Transcript

Welcome to the new term, everyone. I hope you all had a really lovely summer holiday. This is your final year at Braxton School and this time next year many of you will be at university or starting a job. It's an important year for lots of reasons. Next June, of course, there will be all the examinations, but before that, you have to make some big decisions. In March, if you want to continue studying, you will need to apply to college or university. If you decide not to go to university and you want to get a job, then your teachers will give you advice about where to look for work. Of course, there is another choice – you can take a year off studying and maybe travel or work abroad to get some experience and some money!

All this year we will be offering extra lessons which will give you some useful advice about universities and careers. The first session this term will be about looking after your money. Our financial expert, Mr Williams, will give a talk about banks next Monday. It will start at 4 o'clock. It doesn't sound exciting, but it is very useful! Miss Parks will give her talk about applying for courses at university the following week. Then I shall give a talk about finding a part-time job, which is a good idea for some of you as it gives you some work experience. Employers and universities like that. Over the year, we're inviting some people who have different sorts of jobs to talk to you all. If any of your parents have an interesting job and would like to talk about it with the students, please ask them to phone the school secretary on 07890 655 234.

So, I just have to say good luck with this year and tell you that next week's talk about banks will be in the school hall. We hope to see lots of you there!

Exercise 5 page 63

- 1 not tall enough 2 came up with 3 is (really) keen to
4 didn't eat many 5 in spite of the

Exercise 6 page 63

- 1 expect 2 Judging, say 3 me, maybe 4 probably

Exercise 8 page 63

- 1, 4, 6, 7, 8

Unit 6 Tourism

6A Vocabulary

Worth a visit

Exercise 1 page 64

- 1 fountain 2 aquarium 3 market 4 water park
5 harbour 6 castle 7 cathedral 8 statue
9 ruins 10 temple

Exercise 2 page 64

- 1 national park 2 museum 3 palace 4 theme park
5 tower 6 aquarium 7 botanical gardens

Exercise 3 1.21 page 64

- 1 castle 2 market 3 temple 4 harbour, evening

Transcript

1 **Woman** I'd like to book an excursion.

Tourist information officer Of course. Do you know which one you're interested in?

W Well, my husband and I both like history, so we thought maybe the castle ... I imagine it's quite atmospheric?

TIO Yes, it is. There's also a night-time excursion to the Roman ruins.

W A night-time excursion? At night?

TIO Yes. The ruins are far more spectacular at night.

W No, no. I like to be in bed by 9 o'clock. The castle sounds much better.

2 **Man** Hi. I'm interested in booking an excursion for tomorrow.

Tourist information officer Certainly. What did you have in mind?

M Well, the market looks beautiful. And I want to see the harbour too.

TIO Well, I suggest going to the market tomorrow.

M Really? Why's that?

TIO Tomorrow is Friday. The market isn't as crowded on Fridays. At weekends, it's really busy – too busy, in my opinion.

M OK. Thanks for the advice. I'll go to the market.

3 **Woman** Can I book an excursion, please?

Tourist information officer Yes, certainly. Which one are you thinking of?

W Well, I went to this temple twenty years ago. I'd really like to see it again.

TIO No problem. Twenty years ago, eh? It's probably a bit different now.

W Really? In what way?

TIO All the temples are more touristy these days.

W Yes, yes. I suppose so.

TIO And the excursion is quite expensive, I'm afraid: £30.

W But I'd like to go there anyway.

4 **Man** Oh, hello. Can I ask about your excursion to the harbour?

Tourist information officer Yes, of course. What would you like to know?

M Well, there's a morning excursion and one in the evening. Which do you recommend?

TIO They're both great. The evening excursion is much less busy.

M I see.

TIO And it's more romantic, in my opinion.

M OK. I'll go for the evening excursion.

Exercise 4 1.21 page 64

- 1 **a** atmospheric 1 **b** spectacular 2 **a** beautiful
2 **b** crowded 3 **a** touristy 3 **b** expensive 4 **a** busy
4 **b** romantic

Transcript

See exercise 3.

6B Grammar

Present perfect

Exercise 1 page 65

- 1 's broken 2 has come out 3 hasn't visited
4 've lost 5 haven't finished 6 hasn't read

Exercise 2 page 65

- 1 've been 2 has been 3 hasn't rained 4 've visited
5 've been 6 've bought 7 've taken 8 haven't been

Exercise 3 page 65

- 2 Has she spent lots of money? Yes, she has.
3 Has she been windsurfing? Yes, she has.
4 Has she read lots of books? No, she hasn't.
5 Has she swum in the sea? Yes, she has.
6 Has she sent many postcards? No, she hasn't.

Exercise 4 page 65

- 1 gone 2 gone 3 been 4 been 5 been 6 gone

Exercise 5 page 65

- 1 since 2 for 3 since 4 since 5 for 6 since 7 for

Exercise 6 page 65

(Dates depend on when students do the exercise)

- 2 How long have you had this motorbike?
For (X) years. / Since 2012.
3 How long has Liam known Susan?
For three years. / Since (X).
4 How long has Harry lived in Bath?
For (X) years. / Since 2010.
5 How long have they studied English?
For (X) years. / Since they were ten.
6 How long has he been at Cardiff University?
For (X) months. / Since September.

6C Listening

Check your ticket!

Exercise 1 1.22 page 66

Students should underline:

- 1 pasta 2 two 3 cathedral 4 castle 5 touristy

Transcript

- 1 Actually, I ordered the chicken pasta.
2 I need two seats near the front of the plane.
3 No, there's a bus to the cathedral.
4 I'd rather go to the castle first.
5 The market is very touristy.

Exercise 2 1.22 page 66

- 1 a 2 b 3 b 4 b 5 a

Transcript

See exercise 1.

Exercise 4 1.23 page 66

Students should underline:

- 1 camera 2 Morocco 3 single 4 taxi 5 open

Transcript

- 1 A Did you get a new camera for Christmas?
B No, I got a new camera for my birthday.
2 A Did you have a good time in Egypt last month?
B We went to Morocco last month.
3 A Did you book a double room for three nights?
B No, I booked a single room for three nights.
4 A Shall we go by taxi or by bus?
B Let's go by taxi.
5 A I think the zoo is closed in December.
B No, I checked – it's open in December.

Exercise 5 1.24 page 66

- 3 They flew from Los Angeles (A) to Istanbul (C) to Dhaka (D) to Istanbul (C) to Dakar (B).

Transcript

Sandy Valdivieso and her husband were looking forward to their holiday in Africa. They had tickets for a Turkish Airlines flight from Los Angeles to Dakar, the capital of Senegal in West Africa. However, an airline mix-up sent them 11,000 kilometres away from their destination, to another continent. They boarded their flight at Los Angeles International Airport in the USA. But unfortunately, an airline employee at the airport accidentally entered the wrong three-letter airport code into the flight booking system. The code for Dakar is DKR. But the employee entered DAC, which is the code for Dhaka, the capital of Bangladesh, in Asia.

The first leg of their flight to Istanbul in Turkey went smoothly, but it was the second leg of the trip that sent them off in the wrong direction. From Turkey, they headed East rather than West.

At first, Sandy and her husband did not notice that there was a problem. When the flight attendant said they were heading to Dhaka, they thought she was saying 'Dakar' with a Turkish accent. Several hours into the trip they woke up from a long sleep and noticed the inflight map showed the plane over the Middle East. They then realised the plane was full of passengers who looked Asian, not African. That's when they knew that there was a serious mistake. But there was nothing they could do about it: they had to continue all the way to Bangladesh!

Once on the ground, it took several hours for the airline to confirm the mistake was their fault. They apologized to Sandy and her husband and 12 hours later, they flew them back to Istanbul. From there, they took the correct plane to Senegal. To say sorry, Turkish Airlines offered the passengers two free economy class tickets to any destination it flies to.

Exercise 6 1.24 page 66

- 1 T 2 F 3 F 4 T 5 F 6 F

Transcript

See exercise 5.

6D Grammar

Contrast: past simple and present perfect

Exercise 1 page 67

- 1 b 2 a 3 a 4 b 5 a 6 b

Exercise 2 page 67

- 1 've visited 2 started 3 Have ... been 4 went
5 've never seen 6 've arrived 7 explored 8 climbed
9 read 10 has been

Exercise 3 page 67

- 2 went 3 went 4 's been 5 've been 6 's gone

Exercise 4 page 67

- 1 A: Have you ... had B: have, spent
A: did you visit B: started, travelled
2 A: Have you ... tried B: haven't, learned
A: Did you enjoy B: did, booked

- 3 A: Have you ... been B: have, went
A: did it take B: stopped
4 A: Have you ... eaten B: have, bought, didn't enjoy

6E Word Skills

Compounds

Exercise 1 page 68

- 1 checks 2 pass 3 centre 4 lounge 5 season
6 class 7 crew

Exercise 2 page 68

- 2 d, low season 3 g, passport control 4 h, first class
5 c, flight attendant 6 f, online check-in 7 a, seat belt
8 i, hand luggage 9 j, baggage carousel 10 b, single room

Exercise 3 page 68

- 1 baggage carousel 2 flight number 3 first class
4 flight attendant 5 hand luggage 6 passport control
7 single room 8 online check-in 9 low season
10 seat belt

Exercise 4 page 68

- 1 **Four:** excess baggage, baggage reclaim, baggage room, left-luggage office
2 **Two:** baggage, baggage room

6F Reading

Holidays without parents

Exercise 1 page 69

- 1 travel guide 2 sunburn 3 penfriend 4 suncream
5 backpack 6 sunglasses 7 campsite 8 travel programme

Exercise 2 page 69

- 1 T 2 T 3 F 4 T

Exercise 3 page 69

- 1 a 2 d 3 c 4 c

6G Speaking

Planning a holiday

Exercise 1 page 70

- 1 monument 2 musical 3 safari park 4 festival
5 carnival 6 church 7 concert 8 square
9 theatre 10 old town 11 restaurant 12 park
13 shopping district 14 opera house

Exercise 2 page 70

- Making suggestions:** 1 Do you fancy ...? 2 Shall we ...?
3 We could always ... 4 Let's ... 5 What about ...?
6 Why don't we ...?

Accepting a suggestion: 7 I like that idea. 8 It would be nice ... 9 Let's do that. 10 Yes. Why not?

- 11 That sounds like a great idea. 12 That's a really good plan 13 What a good idea.

Deducing a suggestion: 14 I don't think that's a great idea.

15 I'd rather not. 16 I'm not sure about that.

17 I'm not very keen on that idea.

Expressing a preference: 18 Either suggestion is fine by me.

19 I don't mind. 20 They're both good ideas

Exercise 3 page 70

- 1 town 2 about 3 nice 4 worth 5 say 6 repeat
7 park 8 walk 9 buy

Exercise 4 page 70

- 1 more expensive 2 local 3 to buy

Transcript

Teacher Where shall we stay, then?

Student Nothing too expensive.

T Pardon?

S I'd prefer to stay somewhere cheap.

T Well, there's a nice little hotel in the Old Town. It's quite cheap; about £60 a night. If that's too expensive, there's a cheaper hotel near the station.

S Either suggestion is fine by me.

T OK. Let's stay at the hotel in the Old Town, then.

S Fine. Where should we eat, do you think?

T There are some good restaurants in the main square.

S What kind of food do they serve?

T Most of the restaurants here serve local food. But there's an Indian restaurant, too.

S Sorry, did you say 'Indian restaurant'?

T Yes, that's right.

S Oh, I'm not very keen on Indian food. Let's eat local food.

T OK.

S I'd like to do some sightseeing. What do you fancy?

T The fountain in the Old Town is very beautiful. It's near the cathedral, which is also worth a visit.

S That sounds like a great idea. What's the best way to travel around?

T Well, if we stay in the Old Town then we can walk everywhere. But perhaps we should go to other parts of the city.

S We could always buy a travel card.

T That's a really good plan. I'd prefer to travel by bus or tram than to walk.

S I agree.

6H Writing

A holiday blog

Exercise 1 page 71

- 1 go 2 buy 3 visit 4 hire 5 play 6 go
7 lie 8 eat

Exercise 2 page 71

visit a lake, go swimming

Exercise 3 page 71

- 1 I'm / We're 2 We're 3 I'm

Exercise 4 page 71

- 1 Wish I could stay here longer!
2 Taking lots of photos to show you.
3 See you soon!

Review Unit 6

Exercise 1 page 72

- 1 palace 2 harbour 3 market 4 theme park
5 botanical gardens 6 aquarium 7 temple
8 national park

Exercise 2 page 72

- 1 historic 2 impressive 3 disappointing 4 cheap
5 remote 6 atmospheric 7 touristy 8 crowded

Exercise 3 page 72

- 1 cream, burn 2 glasses 3 site 4 pack
5 friend 6 guide

Exercise 4 page 72

- 1 gallery 2 carnival 3 festival 4 theatre
5 square 6 old town 7 safari park

Exercise 5 page 72

- 1 check-in desk 2 boarding pass 3 bag drop
4 departure gate 5 window seat
6 flight attendant 7 hand luggage
8 baggage carousel 9 passport control

Exercise 6 page 73

- 1 've visited 2 hasn't been 3 Have you been
4 have you lived 5 haven't seen 6 haven't called
7 's gone 8 've been

Exercise 7 page 73

- 1 've been 2 didn't like 3 arrived 4 discovered
5 didn't exist 6 didn't have 7 dealt
8 've never met 9 called 10 found
11 haven't done 12 've decided

Exercise 8 page 73

- 1 a 2 b 3 c 4 c 5 a

Unit 7 Money

7A Vocabulary

Spending power

Exercise 1 2.02 page 74

- b \$750,000 c £100 d ¥4.6 million e ¥6,900
f £2.5 billion g \$2,500 h €999,000

Transcript

- a a million euros
b seven hundred and fifty thousand dollars
c one hundred pounds
d four point six million yen
e six thousand nine hundred yen
f two and a half billion pounds
g two and a half thousand dollars
h nine hundred and ninety-nine thousand euros

Exercise 2 page 74

- 1 DIY store 2 baker's 3 greengrocer's 4 butcher's
5 clothes shop 6 cosmetics store 7 garden centre
8 post office 9 shoe shop 10 stationer's

Exercise 3 page 74

- 1 deli (delicatessen) 2 takeaway 3 bank
4 optician's 5 charity shop 6 estate agent's
7 launderette 8 DIY store

Exercise 4 2.03 page 74

- 1 newsagent's 2 florist's 3 jeweller's 4 chemist's

Transcript

- 1 **Customer** I'd like a large bar of chocolate, please.

Newsagent Is this one big enough?

C Yes! How much is it?

N £2. It's on special offer.

C OK. I'll take it.

N Anything else?

C Yes, I'm looking for a copy of a magazine called *Stamp Collectors' Monthly*. Have you got it?

N I'm afraid we don't keep it in stock, no. I'll order it for you, if you like.

C Thanks. When will it come in?

N In about three days, maybe four.

- 2 **Florist** Hi. Can I help you?

Customer Yes. I'd like to buy a bouquet for my wife. It's our anniversary.

F Congratulations! How much are you hoping to spend?

C I'm not sure ... £20?

F OK. I'll see what I can do for that.

C Actually, I'm in a hurry. Have you got anything that's ready to buy now?

F We've got these two. They're both quite nice. The larger one includes these beautiful red roses.

C How much is it?

F It's £28.

C I'll take the smaller one, please.

F Certainly.

- 3 **Jeweller** Can I help you?

Customer Yes. I'm looking for a watch.

J Is it a gift?

C Yes, for my daughter. It's her 18th birthday.

J Have you seen anything you like?

C There's one in the window. The gold one – it's on the left.

J OK. I'll get it for you, so you can have a closer look.

C Thanks. Yes, this is nice. I'll take it.

J You can change it if she doesn't like it ... as long as you keep the receipt.

C Oh, OK.

J I'll put the receipt in the bag.

C Thanks.

- 4 **Chemist** Can I help you?

Customer Yes, I've got a terrible headache and I need some painkillers.

C Well, we've got ibuprofen or paracetamol.

C I'll have the ibuprofen, please.

C Sixteen tablets or thirty-two?

C Sixteen is enough.

C That's £1.99, please. Make sure you follow the instructions on the packet.

C OK, thanks.

Exercise 5 page 74

- 1 sale 2 price tag 3 discount 4 bargain
5 coupon 6 special offer 7 refund 8 receipt

7B Grammar

Second conditional

Exercise 1 page 75

- 1 would help 2 had 3 wouldn't take
4 didn't stay up 5 would ... feel 6 would be
7 could 8 won

Exercise 2 page 75

- 1 drove, wouldn't use 2 bought, wouldn't throw
3 borrowed, wouldn't have to 4 drank, would save
5 wore, could 6 were, would spend
7 turned off, wouldn't use

Exercise 3 page 75

- 1 saw 2 gave, didn't like 3 could 4 knew
5 broke 6 found

Students' own answers

7C Listening

Honesty pays

Exercise 1 page 76

- 1 charges 2 saved 3 buy, pay for 4 afford, lend
5 wastes 6 owe 7 run out of, borrow 8 buy, cost

Exercise 2 2.04 page 76

A: An honest student gets a reward.

Transcript

Back in 2011, Chamindu Amarsinghe was a student and, like many students, he was short of money – so he took a part-time job. For a few hours a week, he worked as a cleaner at the offices of a TV company in Sydney, Australia.

One day, he was cleaning the ground-floor bathroom at a TV company building when he found lots of \$50 and \$100 notes inside a bin. There was too much to count. At first, Mr Amarsinghe, who is originally from New Zealand, thought it was a prank. But when he touched the notes he realised it was real money. He was astonished. His first thought was to tell the authorities. He didn't know why the money was there but he knew that the money didn't belong to him and he didn't want to take it away. He called his supervisor and, before long, police officers collected more than \$100,000 from the bathroom.

No one came forward to claim the money, which was probably connected with a crime. But three years later, Mr Amarsinghe received a phone call to say most of the money – about \$88,000 – was now his. He was astonished – again! The judge decided that the money was a suitable reward for the student's honesty. And the police agreed, particularly because Mr Amarsinghe was short of money when he found the cash but still did not think about taking it for himself. Mr Amarsinghe was delighted to receive the money. When the newspapers interviewed him, he didn't know how he was going to spend it all, but he would give some to his family, some to disabled people and some to a Buddhist temple in Australia.

Exercise 3 page 76

- 1 a job 2 a room 3 a country 4 a number
5 a period of time 6 an adjective to describe a feeling

Exercise 4 2.04 page 76

- 1 a cleaner
2 a bathroom
3 New Zealand
4 100,000
5 three years
6 delighted

Transcript

See exercise 2.

Exercise 5 page 76

- 1 a place 2 a number 3 a period of time 4 a thing

Exercise 6 2.05 page 76

- 1 The apartment is in Spain.
2 She spent nearly one hundred pounds.
3 He's had his job for three years.
4 His hobby is cycling.

Transcript

- 1 It was one of my friends from school who had the idea. He told us that his uncle owns a big apartment in Spain and we could all stay there for free in June. It would be a great way to celebrate the end of our exams. So I asked my parents if I could borrow some money for the flight. They said 'yes' and I was really excited. But then it all went wrong. My friend's uncle didn't want us there. In the end, we never went.
- 2 I'll never go to that department store again. I think the way they treated me is terrible! I spent nearly £100 there on cosmetics but I couldn't use some of the make-up because it gave me problems with my skin. I took it back and asked for a refund – but the shop assistant said I couldn't have a refund because they don't give refunds for make-up. I argued about it and showed her the receipt but it was no good. So in the end I just walked out.
- 3 I've had my job at the radio station for three years now and I really love it – but to be honest, my salary is terrible. It's just enough for rent and food – but I can't afford to go on holiday or buy new clothes or anything like that. So I went to see my boss and we had a chat about it. She thinks I'm doing a great job. But when I asked for more money, she said no. She says the radio station is losing money and can't afford it. Oh well ... next year, maybe.
- 4 I've got quite a lot of money in the bank. I don't know how much exactly – but a few hundred at least. Every birthday, I get presents from my relatives and when they ask me what I want, I always say "money". So they send me birthday cards with money inside. I don't spend it – never. I put it all in the bank. One day, I'll spend it but I'm not sure what I'll buy. I'm not really saving up for anything. But I might buy new bike one day because I'm really into cycling.

Exercise 7 2.05 page 76

- A Speaker 3 B Speaker 1 C Speaker 4
E Speaker 2

The extra sentence is D

Transcript

See exercise 6.

7D Grammar

Past perfect

Exercise 1 page 77

A

Exercise 2 page 77

- 1 had taken 2 had kept 3 had increased
4 hadn't saved 5 had sold

Exercise 3 page 77

- 1 had died 2 had saved up 3 had buried
4 had written 5 had drawn 6 had done
7 had added 8 hadn't known

Exercise 4 page 77

- 2 When we'd bought some chicken, we made dinner.
3 When I got home, my parents had gone out.
4 After the sun had come out, we arrived at the beach.
5 After I had taken my bike apart, I cleaned every piece.
6 When we arrived at the hotel, it had got dark.
7 After I had spoken to my dad, I applied for the job.
8 When she had read the letter, she began to laugh.

Exercise 5 page 77

- 2 After he'd had breakfast, he went shopping.
3 After he'd bought a skateboard, he met friends for lunch.
4 After he'd finished his homework, he practised the guitar.
5 After he'd had dinner, he watched a DVD.
6 After he'd read a magazine, he went to bed.

7E Word Skills

Verb + infinitive or -ing form

Exercise 1 page 78

- 1 to pay 2 cycling 3 ✓ 4 stealing 5 staying
6 ✓ 7 ✓ 8 to pass 9 to phone

Exercise 2 page 78

- 2 shopping 3 to arrive 4 returning 5 to visit
6 to buy 7 scanning 8 enjoying 9 to deliver
10 looking 11 shopping / to shop

Exercise 3 page 78

- 1 two 2 fail 3 fail 4 fail 5 risk 6 risk

7F Reading

Billionaire lifestyle?

Exercise 1 page 79

- 1 a 2 a 3 b 4 b 5 b 6 b 7 a 8 b

Exercise 2 page 79

- c Warren Buffet is a billionaire and leads a modest lifestyle.

Exercise 3 page 79

- 1 D 2 B 3 G 4 F 5 A

Exercise 4 page 79

- 1 T 2 F 3 F 4 T 5 F

7G Speaking

Photo comparison and presentation

Exercise 1 page 80

- 1 C 2 E 3 D 4 F 5 B 6 A 7 G 8 H

Exercise 2 page 80

- B, A, A, D, A, A, C, C, A, A, C, C, D

Exercise 3 2.06 page 80

Transcript

I'd like to start by looking at my school. It's clear that the school doesn't have much money. There are a number of reasons why I say that. First of all, we don't have enough computers, and the ones we have are rather old. Secondly, there aren't many books in the library. And thirdly, the buildings are very old and need some repairs. Last winter, when it rained very heavily, water came in through the roof of the gym.

It's true that people always want more money for education. But I think that the government should listen to them and give schools more money. The main reason I feel this way is that education is important for the future of our country. So, in conclusion, it's clear that schools don't have enough computers and books and that the buildings are often old. The government definitely needs to spend more money on education.

Exercise 4 2.06 page 80

I'd like to start by looking at ..., There are a number of reasons why I ..., First of all, ..., The main reason I feel this way is ..., In conclusion ...

Transcript

See exercise 3.

7H Writing

An opinion essay

Exercise 1 page 81

- 1 F 2 T 3 T 4 F

Exercise 2 page 81

- 1 Although I have got an MP3 player ...
2 If I won €1 million, there are a lot of things I would like to do with the money.; If I gave them €5,000, they could buy ...; ... if I invested the money, it would grow, ...
3 In my opinion, ...
4 First of all; Secondly; Thirdly; Finally
5 What is more, ...

Review Unit 7

Exercise 1 page 82

- 1 baker's 2 greengrocer's 3 cosmetics store
4 florist's 5 post office 6 stationer's 7 deli
8 newsagent's

Exercise 2 page 82

1 b 2 c 3 a 4 a 5 b 6 c

Exercise 3 page 82

- 1 do they charge so much for these clothes
- 2 agreed to lend me some money.
- 3 earn enough to buy a new car
- 4 can't afford those shoes
- 5 's wasting money
- 6 am going to sell my car
- 7 'm saving up so I can go
- 8 have run out of money

Exercise 4 page 82

- 1 income 2 salary 3 CEO 4 profit 5 investors
- 6 entrepreneur 7 contract 8 funding

Exercise 5 page 82

- 1 shopping 2 to sell 3 to take 4 meeting
- 5 to lend 6 to let 7 eating 8 calling

Exercise 6 page 83

- 1 If Janine stayed in London, she'd find another job there.
- 2 If I won the lottery, I would buy a huge house.
- 3 Steve would start his own company if he could find enough investors.
- 4 If prices were not so high, I would buy more things.
- 5 You wouldn't spend so much on food if you used coupons.
- 6 If Alison wasn't so shy, she would be a better salesperson.
- 7 I wouldn't be able to run my business if I didn't have a mobile.
- 8 If someone made me a good offer, I would sell my house.

Exercise 7 page 83

- 1 had imagined 2 had been 3 hadn't done
- 4 had done 5 hadn't heard 6 thought

Exercise 8 page 83

- 1 spoke French, he could 2 regret buying 3 had already started
- 4 If I had 5 hadn't finished it yet

Exam Skills Trainer 4

Exercise 1 page 84

D

It isn't 'B' because he joined up with some people that he met at a hostel.

'I met lots of people.'

'I joined up with a few of them and we started touring the country ...'

It isn't 'C' because he says 'it doesn't have to cost a lot to live here.'

Exercise 2 page 84

1 C 2 A 3 A

Exercise 3 page 84

- 2 prefers, town, country
- 3 relax, holiday
- 4 teach, Spanish cooking

5 good hotel, stay

6 advice, job

7 planning, return to Spain, September

Exercise 4 2.07 page 84

- 1 False 2 True 3 True 4 False 5 False 6 True
- 7 False

Transcript

Ben Have you had a holiday this year, Lucy?

Lucy Yes, I went to Spain in May with my mum, my dad and my little brother. We stayed in a little village near Malaga.

B Oh yeah, I've been to Malaga a few times. My uncle's got a flat there. He works in a hotel.

L Malaga's pretty busy.

B Yes, it is, but I like lively places. I'm not so keen on villages.

L Yes, but it isn't boring in the villages near Malaga. We went camping, hiking and cycling. The countryside is really beautiful.

B I like doing that kind of thing at home. But when I'm on holiday, I prefer lying on the beach and then going to cafes in the evenings.

L There were some lovely cafes in the village we went to, and the people were so friendly.

B Was the food good?

L It was amazing. I love Spanish tapas. I love paella. I really want to do a Spanish cookery course.

B I could teach you.

L Really?

B Yeah. My uncle's a chef at the hotel too. He taught me everything he knows.

L Lucky you! I'd like to visit your uncle's hotel.

B Well ... next time you go to Malaga, you can go there. I'll give you the address.

L Thanks. Are you going again soon?

B I don't think so. I haven't got any money.

L I'd get a job if I were you. I'm working in my local supermarket in the summer because I want to go to Italy in September.

B Hmm. Maybe I'll give them a ring and ask about a job then.

Exercise 5 page 85

- 1 their 2 when 3 up 4 had 5 could 6 to
- 7 time 8 the 9 of 10 If

Exercise 8 page 85

Most important improvement: the parking

Reason: the town is always full of traffic

Result: tourists could leave their cars in the car park and get a bus into the centre

Second improvement: cut the entrance price to museums and art galleries

Reason: tickets can be very expensive, especially for families

Result: more tourists would visit these attractions

Third improvement: interesting things for children to do in the park

Reason: –

Result: If there were more attractions for children, more families would come to the town

Unit 8 Crime

8A Vocabulary

Crimes and criminals

Exercise 1 page 86

- 1 drug-dealing 2 murderer 3 robbery 4 shoplifter
5 smuggling 6 thief 7 thieves

Exercise 2 page 86

- 1 burglary, burglar 2 vandalism, vandal
3 arson, arsonist 4 mugging, mugger

Exercise 3 page 86

- 1 set 2 broke 3 deals 4 smuggle 5 killed
6 rob 7 stole 8 vandalised 9 mugged

Exercise 4 2.08 page 86

- 1 arson 2 smuggling

Transcript

- 1 A fire broke out in a department store in the town centre shortly after midnight. Police have launched an investigation and suspect that somebody started the fire deliberately. Witnesses saw two men running from the store. The police are studying CCTV footage of the area. They hope to identify the culprits and have appealed for more witnesses to contact them.
- 2 Police have discovered large quantities of cigarettes and alcohol in a garage in Brighton. They were patrolling the area and became suspicious when they saw men carrying a large number of boxes into the garage. The police are interviewing two suspects who they believe brought the goods from Spain and were planning to sell them illegally in pubs and bars. They have also searched a house nearby and made another arrest.

Exercise 5 page 86

- a an investigation b CCTV footage
c the culprits, witnesses d the area e suspects
f a house, arrest

8B Grammar

Reported speech (1)

Exercise 1 page 87

- 2 'I want to go to bed.'
3 'We're arriving at six o'clock.'
4 'I don't like cheese.'
5 'I went to Italy in 2009.'
6 'I'm reading a good book.'
7 'We received a lot of good advice.'
8 'I'm not going to do the washing-up.'

Exercise 2 page 87

- 2 was 3 were appealing 4 was going to search
5 had launched 6 made 7 thought, was

Exercise 3 page 87

- 2 Mike said that somebody had broken into their house the night before.
3 Kate said that people sometimes sold drugs outside her school.
4 The police officer said that they were going to study the CCTV footage that day.
5 Fred said that John had stolen a camera from a shop the day before.
6 Sam said that the police were looking for the thief who had stolen his car.

Exercise 4 page 87

- 2 ... that they had arrived two minutes earlier.
3 ... that they were getting out of their car.
4 ... that she recognised one of them.
5 ... that he had robbed a bank in London four years before / ago.
6 ... that they looked nervous.
7 ... that one of them was carrying a large black bag.
8 ... that they were going into the bank.
9 ... that she was going to follow them.

8C Listening

A life of crime

Exercise 1 page 88

- 1 a 2 c 3 b 4 a 5 b 6 c

Exercise 2 2.09 page 88

- 1 He usually buys jewellery.
2 She had a short illness after her holiday.
3 He likes the idea.
4 No, she never made large amounts of money.
5 No.
6 He was employed.

Transcript

- 1 Last year, I bought my wife a coat for her birthday – but that was quite unusual. (And she didn't like it anyway. She took it back to the shop!) I normally get her some earrings, or a necklace – sometimes a ring. That kind of thing, anyway. She says I've got good taste!
- 2 I went to West Africa last summer and when I got back, I didn't feel well. I had a high temperature and a really bad headache. I thought I had a really nasty tropical disease – but it didn't last long. I went to see the doctor and she said I probably just caught a cold on the flight home!
- 3 I've tried a few unusual sports in my time, like cave diving and paragliding – but I've never tried BASE jumping. It really appeals to me, actually. Although it looks pretty frightening and I'm sure it's dangerous.
- 4 When I first left university, I started my own company. It was a computer business – I gave computer advice to people who couldn't afford a contract with a large company. It went quite well, but I never made large amounts of money. Now I work for a software company in London.

- 5 When I was a kid, we lived in a fantastic house on the coast. It was only a five minute walk to the beach, and we went there every day after school – even in the winter! But the house didn't belong to my parents, and when I was about seven or eight, we moved to the city.
- 6 We spent a few years in Greece when I was a teenager. I went to school there and everything. We lived in a village – because my parents found a beautiful house there and fell in love with it. But I always felt quite different from the other children. My dad had a well-paid job in Athens. So they always thought of us as the rich foreign kids who didn't speak Greek very well!

Exercise 3 page 88

- 1 were 2 Not all 3 well 4 often
5 did not often have 6 inside 7 was not

Exercise 4 2.10 page 88

Born: 1872 Real name: Arizona Husband: George Barker Number of sons: four Died: 1935

Transcript

Host Continuing our series on public enemies, I'm talking to Martin Bagwell, an expert on American criminal gangs from the 1930s. And today we're discussing a fascinating figure called Ma Barker. Was she a well-known figure in her day?

Martin Yes, she certainly was. At that time – in the 1930s – there were quite a few famous criminals in the United States. For example, Bonnie and Clyde, Baby Face Nelson and John Dillinger. The United States government called these people "Public Enemies" because they had committed large numbers of serious crimes. The public were very aware of these people and the newspapers had a lot of stories about them. Although they made up some of the stories!

H So they were almost like celebrities.

M Yes, they were. They were celebrities really. Remember, these were the days before TV and the Internet. People were fascinated by the lives of these criminals – and sometimes it's difficult to know which of the stories about them are true and which are false.

H So what do we know for sure about Ma Barker?

M Well, we know she was born in 1872 and that her name was Arizona – but people called her Arrie. She was married to a man called George Barker and they had four sons. The sons' names were Herman, Lloyd, Arthur and Fred. Fred was the youngest boy – and he was Ma's favourite.

H And were they a fairly normal family at first?

M No, not really. They were very poor. The boys did badly at school and probably never learned to read or write. They were always in trouble with the law.

H What did Ma and her husband think of that?

M Well, Ma always supported her boys. If they ended up in prison, Ma tried to get them out. But their father, George, had a different opinion and often had disagreements with his wife about their sons. He hated living in a family of criminals – and when the boys grew up into adults, he left. The boys committed crime after crime, including murders and robberies – and Ma Barker was always with them – right until the end.

H What happened at the end?

M Well, police officers from the FBI were determined to find Ma Barker. One day in January 1935, they found the house where Ma and her favourite son, Fred, were hiding. Fred and Ma refused to give themselves up. There was a gunfight with

the police and neither Fred nor Ma Barker got out of the building alive. After their deaths, Ma Barker became even more famous. The head of the FBI said that Ma Barker had been the most dangerous criminal of the past ten years. Today, though, most experts think that this probably wasn't true. In fact, it is likely that she never killed anyone – and perhaps did not commit any crimes at all, although she certainly helped her boys to commit them.

H Martin Bagwell – thank you.

Exercise 5 2.10 page 88 1 a 2 a/b 3 a 4 b 5 a/b

Transcript

See exercise 4.

8D Grammar

Reported speech (2)

Exercise 1 page 89

- Adrian said that he hadn't told the police about the vandalism.
- Julia said that she couldn't find her passport.
- Daniel said that he would be at the park at 7 o'clock.
- Joanna said that somebody had stolen her new bike.
- Tina said that her dad would lend her some money for the train.
- Sara said that she could speak French, but she couldn't speak Spanish.
- Michael said that he had invited all of his friends to a barbecue at his house.
- Anna said that she wouldn't tell anybody about the surprise party.

Exercise 2 page 89

- 1 said 2 told 3 told 4 said 5 told 6 told
7 said 8 said

Exercise 3 page 89

- 'My sister can't swim.'
- 'I've finished the exercise.'
- 'James will be home soon.'
- 'I met a famous film actor!'
- 'I'll get home by 10 o'clock, Dad.'
- 'My cousins can't speak English.'
- 'Lily has always been my best friend.'

Exercise 4 page 89

... had seen a robbery in the shopping centre.
 Freya said (that) she'd heard about it on the news.
 Joe said (that) he had been there. He said (that) he had taken lots of photos of the robbers on his phone.
 Freya said (that) he'd probably get a reward.
 Joe said (that) he wouldn't get a reward because he couldn't show the photos to the police.
 Freya said (that) she didn't understand.
 Joe said (that), the day before, he'd been the victim of another crime. He said (that) a thief had stolen his phone on the bus.

8E Word Skills

Adjective suffixes

Exercise 1 page 90

2 peaceful 3 lucky 4 economical 5 enjoyable
6 selfish / selfless 7 weekly 8 tasteful / tasteless

Exercise 2 page 90

1 ous 2 ous 3 y 4 ly 5 able 6 al 7 ous 8 ish
9 ful

Exercise 3 page 90

-ful: beautiful; careful; helpful; painful

-less: careless; childless; helpless; painless

-ish: childish, greenish **-able:** affordable, drinkable

-ly: cowardly **-al:** magical

Exercise 4 page 90

1 drinkable 2 painful 3 helpful 4 beautiful
5 greenish 6 affordable

Exercise 5 page 90

1 care | less | ness 2 courage | ous 3 re | us(e) | able
4 understand | able 5 un | comfort | able
6 un | happi | ness 7 home | less | ness 8 in | visibil | ity

8F Reading

A mysterious disappearance

Exercise 1 page 91

1 dental 2 open-top 3 telephone 4 secret
5 murder 6 train 7 chewing 8 finger

Exercise 2 page 91

1 T 2 F 3 T

Exercise 3 page 91

1 c 2 c 3 d 4 d

8G Speaking

Photo description and comparison

Exercise 2 2.11 page 92

1 must 2 must 3 must 4 can't

Transcript

Both photos show a place where a crime has happened. In the first photo, it's clear that there has been a burglary. In the second photo, there has obviously been a riot, and some looting. So the common theme is crime.

In the second photo, there's a man in the shop, whereas the house in the first photo is empty. The owners must be away or at work. Another obvious difference is that the first photo includes some graffiti. The burglars have left a horrible message on the wall – and it's in English. So the burglars must speak some English!

Unlike the first photo, there are no horrible messages in the second photo. But the man still looks very sad. He must be the owner of the shop. And he can't be very happy about the riot because the looters have taken nearly everything!

Exercise 3 2.11 page 92

1 Both 2 common theme 3 whereas
4 obvious difference 5 Unlike

Transcript

See exercise 2.

Exercise 5 2.12 page 92

1 in my opinion 2 What's more 3 As I see it
4 I suppose

Transcript

Examiner Which is worse, in your opinion: mugging or smuggling? Tell me why you think so.

Candidate Um, it seems to me that mugging is worse.

E Why do you think that?

C Well, in my opinion, mugging is a serious crime because muggers steal people's personal possessions. What's more, muggers often attack people and it must be terrifying. As I see it, smuggling doesn't really affect ordinary people. I suppose it's true to say that it doesn't really harm anyone.

8H Writing

An email

Exercise 1 page 93

Immediately after suddenly, at that moment, just then. a few moments later

Some time later shortly afterwards, a short while later, before long, after a while, soon after, soon

Review Unit 8

Exercise 1 page 94

1 arson, arsonist
2 mugger, muggings
3 Burglars, burgled
4 looters, looting
5 shoplifting, shoplifters

Exercise 2 page 94

1 investigation 2 searched 3 suspect 4 arrest
5 witnesses 6 CCTV footage 7 culprit 8 patrol

Exercise 3 page 94

1 e 2 g 3 b 4 h 5 d 6 a 7 f 8 c

Exercise 4 page 94

1 economical 2 tasteless 3 brownish 4 lucky
5 careless 6 peaceful 7 furious 8 reliable
9 dangerous

Exercise 5 page 94

1 said – told us
2 my – his
3 knew
4 last night – the night before
5 is keeping – was keeping
6 her – him

Exercise 6 page 95

- 1 to tell him/her everything she knew about the suspect.
- 2 said there was something in that flat they were not seeing.
- 3 asked her if that was her phone.
- 4 us that the train had been late every morning that week.
- 5 how many times he had come into the shop.
- 6 told the officer that he had first realised that his car was missing the night before.
- 7 to say where her son had been the day before.

Exercise 7 page 95

- 1 described
- 2 on
- 3 before
- 4 when
- 5 there

Unit 9 Science

9A Vocabulary

Gadgets

Exercise 1 page 96

- 1 wood
- 2 steel
- 3 glass
- 4 stone
- 5 aluminium
- 6 cardboard
- 7 plastic

Exercise 2 page 96

- 1 leather
- 2 gold
- 3 rubber
- 4 ceramic, cardboard
- 5 paper
- 6 concrete
- 7 iron
- 8 nylon
- 9 copper

Exercise 3 page 96

- 1 wood rubber cardboard
- 2 iron copper gold aluminium steel
- 3 leather
- 4 stone
- 5 nylon plastic
- 6 glass ceramic concrete

Exercise 4 page 96

- 1 rectangular
- 2 square
- 3 spherical
- 4 circular
- 5 triangular
- 6 curved
- 7 straight

Exercise 5 2.13 page 96

- 1 A
- 2 B
- 3 A
- 4 C
- 5 A
- 6 C
- 7 B

Transcript

- 1 It's rectangular. //
- 2 It's spherical and it's made of plastic and metal. //
- 3 It prevents you from getting lost. //
- 4 It's got a metal lid and a metal handle. //
- 5 It's mostly made of plastic and it's rechargeable. //
- 6 It's used for making tea. //
- 7 It's used for listening to music. //

9B Grammar

The passive (present simple and past simple)

Exercise 1 page 97

- 1 are sold
- 2 isn't played
- 3 Are ... used
- 4 are committed
- 5 aren't grown
- 6 Are ... made

Exercise 2 page 97

- 2 Penicillin was discovered by Alexander Fleming.
- 3 The match wasn't won by Rafa Nadal.
- 4 That car was made by robots.
- 5 Were the *Hunger Games* books written by Suzanne Collins?
- 6 The *Hobbit* films were directed by Peter Jackson.

Exercise 3 page 97

- 1 Phones are sometimes used as satnavs.
- 2 Was *Make you feel my love* first sung by Bob Dylan?
- 3 The wheel was probably invented about 5,000 years ago.
- 4 The suspect was quickly arrested.
- 5 Was the missing jewellery ever found?

Exercise 4 page 97

- 1 was invented
- 2 wasn't powered
- 3 was built
- 4 was called
- 5 was used
- 6 weren't sold
- 7 were developed
- 8 was added
- 9 wasn't added
- 10 were sold

9C Listening

Intentions of the speaker

Exercise 1 page 98

- 1 lost
- 2 came up with
- 3 runs
- 4 browse
- 5 gets
- 6 prescribed

Exercise 2 page 98

- 1 warn
- 2 complain
- 3 apologise
- 4 enquire
- 5 recommend
- 6 encourage
- 7 welcome
- 8 inform
- 9 challenge
- 10 comfort
- 11 persuade
- 12 entertain

Exercise 3 2.14 page 98

- 1 warning
- 2 apologising
- 3 enquiring
- 4 comforting
- 5 encouraging
- 6 complaining

Transcript

- 1 As you go walking in the mountains today, be very careful. The weather forecast isn't good and if you don't know this area well, it's very easy to get lost. You must complete your walk before it gets dark. It's really dangerous to be in the mountains at night.
- 2 I know ... I know. It's 8 o'clock, I said I'd be here at 7. I'm so sorry – I left home late, and then the bus was full and I had to wait for the next one. And I couldn't call you because I'd left my phone at home! I'm really sorry.
- 3 Oh hello. I was just wondering – I don't know if you can help me – but do you know what time the museum closes? I mean the museum of modern art, in the city centre? Only this is our last day here and I don't want to miss it. Is it open in the evening?
- 4 I heard about your accident. You poor thing. It must hurt a lot. I broke my ankle once and it was so painful! And it means you can't go skiing next week. Oh, how annoying! Look, if there's anything I can do, tell me. I could come over and keep you company, if you want – we could watch a DVD together or something.
- 5 Don't be nervous about the final. You're a great tennis player. Just play your natural game and you'll be fine. And remember to enjoy it too. We're already proud of you, win or lose. So just relax and I'm sure you'll do really well.

- 6 No, I'm afraid everything is not OK. For a start, I ordered chicken – this isn't chicken. I'm not sure what it is, but it isn't chicken. Also, this water tastes funny. Or maybe the glass isn't clean. Anyway, I can't drink it. For a five-star hotel restaurant, this really isn't good enough.

Exercise 4 2.15 page 98

1 a 2 b 3 a 4 c 5 b

Transcript

- 1 Good evening everybody and thank you for coming to our special event at this amazing castle. It's wonderful to see so many people here for the launch of our new car, the Model TX3. Later, we'll give you lots of information about the vehicle and you'll have the chance to speak to our engineers and ask questions. But for now, just relax, get a drink and enjoy this spectacular venue for a while!
- 2 I've had a look at your laptop, but I'm afraid it's bad news. If I look here, you can see where the water has damaged the inside of the laptop. You can't repair damage like that, I'm afraid. You can replace all of these parts, but that will cost a lot of money. My advice would be that you just buy a new laptop. I'm sorry, but there's nothing else I can suggest.
- 3 This new type of battery is going to make it far quicker and cheaper for people to recharge their smartphones. The technology works, and it was discovered right here in our laboratories. All we need to do is find enough funding to develop our product. And that's where you come in! You can help us raise the \$5 million we need to turn this brilliant idea into reality. We believe we're offering you a fantastic opportunity because these new batteries really are an improvement on what is available today.
- 4 So, this is a little machine I made at home. As you can see, it's got wheels, like a little car. And it is powered by one small battery. I tested it three times and my best distance was eight metres and twenty centimetres. Now, this is what you have to do. In your teams, you have to design and build a machine that is powered by the same type of battery as my machine. How far can it travel? Can it beat my distance of eight metres twenty? That's your mission. Good luck!
- 5 This is the new 3D television with ultra-high definition and surround sound. It's a smart TV – which means it has internet access, so you can stream films and TV programmes straight from the web. You can also use it for browsing the internet, although personally, I find it much more difficult to use than a normal computer or even a smart phone. But for watching films and TV, it really is amazing. I'm not a fan of 3D myself, but the ultra high definition is spectacular. And considering it's the most advanced TV on the market, the remote control is amazingly simple to use.

9D Grammar

The passive (present perfect and future)

Exercise 1 page 99

- 1 has been stolen 2 have been developed
3 has been damaged 4 hasn't been seen
5 has been spent 6 hasn't been sold

Exercise 2 page 99

- 1 The factory has been sold.
- 2 The glass in the windows has been replaced.
- 3 The big front door has been painted.
- 4 The metal sign hasn't been changed.
- 5 A new road has been built.
- 6 The new roof hasn't been finished.

Exercise 3 page 99

- 2 Has your home ever been burgled?
- 3 Have you ever been chased by a dog?
- 4 Has your phone ever been stolen?
- 5 Have you ever been invited to a wedding?

Students' own answers

Exercise 4 page 99

- 2 most of your electricity will be provided by the sun.
- 3 all the rooms will be cleaned by robots.
- 4 the lights will be operated by your smartphone.
- 5 all of your food will be prepared by machines.
- 6 the temperature in every room will be controlled by a computer.

Exercise 5 page 99

- 1 have been completed 2 has been chosen
3 will it be built 4 will not be decided
5 will be approved 6 will be sent

9E Word Skills

Verb + preposition

Exercise 1 page 100

- 1 at 2 to 3 of 4 for 5 for 6 about 7 to
8 to 9 about 10 with 11 in 12 about

Exercise 2 page 100

- 1 for 2 at 3 for 4 about 5 of 6 about
7 to 8 to

Exercise 3 page 100

- 1 inform 2 charge 3 inform

9F Reading

Inventions that save lives

Exercise 1 page 101

- 1 movement 2 reconstruction 3 recordings
4 baldness 5 invention 6 arrangement 7 deafness
8 discovery

Exercise 2 page 101

- 2 LifeStraw, Photo B
3 AidPod, Photo A

Exercise 3 page 101

- 1 T 2 T 3 DNS 4 F 5 DNS 6 F

9G Speaking

Making a complaint

Exercise 1 page 102

- 1 games console 2 digital camera 3 DVD player
4 e-book reader 5 mobile 6 digital radio
7 tablet 8 MP3 player 9 headphones

Exercise 2 page 102

a 4 b 5 c 7 d 9 e 8 f 6 g 1 h 2 i 10 j 3

Exercise 3 2.16 page 102

- 1 digital radio
2 volume control, power lead, remote control

Transcript

Shop assistant Hello, can I help you?

Customer Yes, I bought this digital radio here a week ago and there's a fault with it.

SA Oh, I'm sorry. What's wrong with it?

C There's something wrong with the volume control.

SA Let's have a look. Have you got the power lead with you?

C Yes, it's in the box.

SA OK, I'll just plug it in.

C You see? It's very quiet. And when I try to turn it up ... nothing happens.

SA Have you tried using the remote control?

C No, I haven't.

SA There. It works perfectly with the remote control.

C But it's still faulty, isn't it? Can I have my money back?

SA We don't give refunds, I'm afraid.

C No refunds? I'm not happy about that! The volume control doesn't work!

SA I can give you a credit note.

C Hmm. Well, OK.

SA Have you got the receipt with you?

C Yes, I have. It's in the box.

SA OK. If you just wait a moment, I'll sort it out for you.

Exercise 4 2.16 page 102

- 1 wrong, shop assistant 2 something, customer
3 money, customer 4 refunds, shop assistant
5 happy, customer 6 credit, shop assistant
7 receipt, shop assistant

Transcript

See exercise 3.

9H Writing

A formal letter

Exercise 1 page 103

C

Exercise 2 page 103

- 1 rather than 2 Since 3 so

Exercise 3 page 103

- 1 all 2 balance 3 opinion 4 conclusion 5 reasons
The writer uses 'In conclusion, ...'

Review Unit 9

Exercise 1 page 104

- 1 aluminium 2 wood 3 stone 4 plastic 5 leather
6 Copper 7 cardboard 8 gold 9 cement
10 rubber 11 Steel

Exercise 2 page 104

- 1 triangular 2 circular 3 square 4 spherical
5 curved 6 rectangular

Exercise 3 page 104

- 1 apologise 2 complain 3 encourage
4 tell a story 5 recommend 6 warn 7 thank
8 challenge 9 welcome 10 enquire

Exercise 4 page 104

- 1 come up with 2 prescribe 3 get 4 browse
5 lose 6 run on

Exercise 5 page 104

- 1 about 2 of 3 about 4 to 5 for 6 about
7 for 8 about 9 with 10 of

Exercise 6 page 105

- 1 Every year, a competition for 'best inventor' is held by my school.
2 Materials are given to you and you are asked to design something.
3 I was encouraged by my school to take part this year.
4 The final decision is made by a group of five teachers.
5 The inventions are tested (by them) for usefulness.
6 A prize is given (by them) for the best invention.
7 The prize for the 'best inventor' was given (by them) to my friend Jo.
8 The prize is presented at the end of school ceremony.

Exercise 7 page 105

- 1 have been contacted 2 have been informed
3 will be given 4 have never been given
5 have been given 6 will be recognised
7 will be introduced 8 will be invited

Exercise 8 page 105

- 1 was 2 were 3 been 4 it 5 yet 6 be

Exam Skills Trainer 5

Exercise 1 page 106

B is correct: 'I think it was the meal I had on the journey across.'

A: Mark was ill on the first day he arrived.

C: The doctor thinks this, but Mark doesn't agree.

D: Mark didn't eat anything at the station.

Exercise 2 page 106

- 1 B 2 B 3 C 4 A 5 D

Exercise 3 2.17 page 106

- 1 B 2 B 3 C 4 A 5 C

Transcript

Jake Have you entered the design competition at school? I heard that the first prize is a trip to a fashion show during London fashion week. What did you win last year?

Sally Oh, the first prize was £50 to spend on clothes. This year's prize is much better, but I haven't entered the competition yet.

J Why not? You're brilliant. Nobody's better than you!

S But I can't think of anything this time.

J Really? You've got lots of designs. What about those T-shirts you sold online last summer? They were amazing. All the girls at school loved them. My sister bought three!

S Well, yes, I know. I want to try to design something for this year, but I need to think of something new. All my designs are old now.

J When's the competition deadline?

S It's 8 July.

J So you've still got a few weeks.

S Yes, but I told you, I haven't got any ideas! I spent yesterday looking at fashion magazines and websites, trying to think of something. And I spent last weekend in town looking at all the best fashion stores. I just couldn't think of anything. I certainly didn't want to wear anything from them myself!

J Right ... So ... Are you looking at women's clothes?

S Yeah. I'd like to design an evening dress, or something like that.

J Well that's OK, but why don't you do something different? How about designing something for men?

S Such as?

J I don't know ... jackets maybe, or how about trainers?

S Hmm ... that's a good idea. I've never designed shoes before. OK, I'll take a look at some websites.

Exercise 4 page 107

1 B 2 A 3 C 4 C 5 A 6 B 7 C 8 A
9 B 10 C

Exercise 5 page 107

A, C, D, F, H

Exercise 7 page 107

1 for example 2 for instance 3 like 4 such as

Cumulative Review 1 (Units 1–1)

Exercise 1 2.18 page 108

(Possible answers)

1, 2, 3 and 4 embarrassed / ashamed

Transcript

- 1 It was my dad's fiftieth birthday last weekend and everyone was there: my grandparents, my aunts and uncles, my cousins – the whole family. We were all having a great time: chatting, singing, dancing, – it was all going really well. And then it was time for the cake. I was trying to be helpful, so I went into the kitchen to get it. Unfortunately, the cake never reached the table because I tripped and dropped it on the floor as I was walking in. I felt terrible.
- 2 I once had a problem with my favourite pair of jeans. I suppose they were a bit tight, but I liked them that way. Anyway, you can probably guess what happened. One morning in school, as I was sitting down at my desk, my jeans broke. The worst thing was that the teacher had just walked into the classroom, so it was very quiet – everybody heard the noise. There was a moment of

silence, and then the whole class started laughing – even the teacher joined in. It was awful!

- 3 Do you ever forget people's names? It happened to me a few days ago. I was having a coffee with a friend when this boy came up to our table. I recognized him as one of my brother's friends, but I couldn't remember his name. I said 'hi' anyway, and we chatted for a bit – everything was fine until my friend asked me to introduce him. There was this horrible silence, and I could feel my face turning red. In the end, he introduced himself – his name was Eddie. I think he was really annoyed.
- 4 I was on holiday in Greece when this happened. I wanted to play beach volleyball with some Greek boys, so I walked up to them and shouted, 'kalimaree' – 'good morning' to them. They all looked at me, and then they started laughing. After that, they moved further up the beach to play. My sister also found the situation amusing when I told her about it. Then I found out why. Apparently, kalimaree means 'squid' in Greek; 'good morning' is 'kalimeara'. You can imagine how stupid I felt.

Exercise 2 2.18 page 108

1 C 2 B 3 E 4 A

Transcript

See exercise 1.

Exercise 4 page 108

C

Exercise 5 page 108

1 C 2 A 3 E 4 B 5 D

Exercise 6 page 109

1 c 2 b 3 a 4 a 5 b 6 b 7 c 8 b
9 a 10 c

Cumulative Review 2 (Units 1–3)

Exercise 1 2.19 page 110

1 T 2 F 3 F 4 T 5 F

Transcript

And now for something different.

The City of London is famous for its many museums: the British Museum and the Victoria & Albert to name but a few. However, there are also a number of other smaller institutions that are not quite so famous, but are well worth a visit. This is the case of the London Cinema Museum. The London Cinema Museum houses a collection of all kinds of things related to the cinema of the past, including films, equipment and furnishings. Many of the exhibits date back to the earliest days of cinema in the 1890s. What's more, the collection is housed in a beautiful old building called The Master House which itself has a place in cinema history. The building was once a home for poor people, and the English actor Charlie Chaplin spent some time there as a child when his family had no money to feed him. The collection is well worth visiting, but in order to see it, you have to book a guided tour. The museum is open on most days of the year and you can book online or by phone. The price is £10 for adults and £7 for students with a student card.

As well as the collection, the museum holds regular talks and presentations by some of the most important experts on film and cinema. Several nights a month, there is also a showing of a film from the museum's collection. Tickets for these events are available in advance at £8.50 for adults and £6.50 for students or for a slightly higher price at the door: £10 for adults and £7 for students.

Located in the district of Kennington, to the south of the river, the museum is easy to get to by public transport. The nearest tube stations are Kennington and Elephant and Castle, but many London buses stop nearby, if you prefer travelling overland.

So, if you're a fan of the cinema, and you're spending some time in London, why not find out what's on at the Cinema Museum? If you manage to fit a visit into your busy schedule, you won't be disappointed.

Exercise 3 page 110

- 1 b (watching all thirteen episodes) 2 a (nervously)
3 c (monthly subscription) 4 d (watch what they want when they want) 5 c (Netflix has its own TV drama series)

Exercise 4 page 111

- 1 a 2 b 3 c 4 b 5 b 6 c 7 a 8 a
9 c 10 b

Cumulative Review 3 (Units 1–5)

Exercise 1 2.20 page 112

- a 5 b 4 c 1 d 3 e 2

Transcript

- 1 ... So, let's start by looking at the different sections of a CV. You should start by giving your personal details, that's your name, address and contact details. Your age, nationality and marital status shouldn't be important to an employer, but some companies may ask you to give this information. After that comes your personal profile where you have to try and sell yourself to the company. Look at it as a kind of mini advert....
- 2 **Olivia** Hello, I'm Olivia.
Paul Hi, nice to meet you. I'm Paul.
O What do you do, Paul?
P I work for an engineering company. Right now, we're building a new bridge over the river Mersey in Liverpool.
O That sounds interesting!
P Yes, it is, but I'm away from home a lot, so I don't see much of my family. I often have problems at work as well, so my job can be quite frustrating. On the other hand, every day is different, so there's never a chance I'll get bored.
- 3 ... And now for some news for those of you looking for a job. JPH Sports is opening a brand new store in the Mall and they are looking for a team of reliable and enthusiastic sales assistants. There are part-time and full-time jobs available. If you're interested and you have worked in the retail sector before, you should go to the information desk in the Mall to pick up a form. The closing date for applications is this Friday, so you must hurry.
- 4 **Interviewer** Please take a seat.
Candidate Thanks.
I So Annabel, what makes you think you'd be a good waitress?

C Well, I'm a friendly and outgoing kind of person, and I like being with people. I had some experience of serving customers in my grandmother's coffee shop last year. Now, I'd like to try working in a busier environment. That's why I applied for this job.

I How much would you like to earn?

C I'm not sure. What's the normal rate?

- 5 This is the automatic answering service for Toyota tours. Guided tours of the car factory are available from Monday to Friday except for company holidays. Individuals must join a larger group to visit the factory. The tour begins at 11 a.m. and ends at 1 p.m., but visitors must register at the reception by 10.30 a.m. Please note that you must wear sensible shoes. Go to the company website to make a reservation. Thank you for calling.

Exercise 2 2.20 page 112

- 1 b 2 c 3 b 4 a 5 c

Transcript

See exercise 1.

Exercise 4 page 112

- 1 D 2 F 3 A 4 C 5 B

Exercise 5 page 113

- 1 the post 2 When the right combination is found
3 a good nose 4 identify the flavours 5 two weeks later

Exercise 6 page 113

- 1 a 2 b 3 b 4 a 5 a 6 c 7 b 8 c
9 c 10 b

Cumulative Review 4 (Units 1–7)

Exercise 1 2.21 page 114

- 1 a dress 2 a novel 3 some potatoes 4 an album

Transcript

- 1 I often meet up with some friends at the weekend to go into town. We get the bus in, and then we spend all day going around the shops. There are some great clothes shops in the city centre and sometimes they have a sale. We have a lot of fun trying things on in the fitting rooms, and I always manage to find a bargain. I'll have to get a new wardrobe soon, because all of my cupboards are full!
- 2 I hardly ever go to the shops, really and I can't stand clothes shopping. The only thing I ever spend any money on is a new download for my e-reader. My friends know that I love reading, so they gave it to me for my birthday last year. I'm really keen on science fiction, and I read at least one book every week. Books are always so much better than films, I find, so I don't go to the cinema very often. Give me an e-book any day!
- 3 I try really hard not to waste my money as I haven't got a lot of it. My job isn't very well paid so I can't afford a new phone or a tablet or anything like that. But I do enjoy going to our local farmer's market on a Saturday morning. The fruit is always so fresh, and it's often much cheaper than at the supermarket. There are all kinds of special offers on the vegetables if you buy a large quantity, so that's what I usually do.

- 4 I guess the thing I spend most of my money on is music. I listen to it all the time. I don't use my MP3 player any more as I have a nice new phone, which sounds quite good. I download most of my music, and I have a few CDs that people have given me. But for me the best way to listen to music is on the old records from the past – vinyls they're called. I've started a vinyl collection and I love going to old record shops to see what I can find.

Exercise 2 2.21 page 114
1 E 2 B 3 C 4 A

Transcript

See exercise 1.

Exercise 4 page 114
1 b 2 a 3 c

Exercise 5 page 114

- 1 **a:** The millionaires decide who to give the money to themselves: *[they] go into poor areas of their city to find three charities to give some of their money to.*
c: The text mentions that *Secret Millionaire* is a reality show, but says nothing about how the programme is good for society.
- 2 **b:** The first reaction of the students when they find the money is to decide how to spend it. They make no attempt to find the owner: *At first, the students began to talk about what they would do with the money.*
c: At no point in the story did the students call the charity shop.
- 3 **a:** The text mentions only one kind of bank account: *a Student Account.*
b: The advice given in the text is about opening an account, not managing money: *Then why not open an account with us?*

Exercise 6 page 115
1 c 2 a 3 b 4 a 5 b 6 b 7 c 8 a
9 b 10 b

Cumulative Review 5 (Units 1–9)

Exercise 1 2.22 page 116
1 a 2 a 3 b 4 b 5 c

Transcript

- 1 Hi Maisie, it's Charlotte. Um, hope you're OK. Er, we got back from our holiday in Ibiza late last night. We had a great time. Um, I wanted to talk to you about the e-book reader you lent me for the trip. Er, I used it a lot, so thanks for that. Um, the only problem is, um, that I, er, that I seem to have come home without it. Er, I'm terribly sorry, Maisie, I think I left it in the drawer of the cupboard in the hotel room. Um, I'll buy you a new one, I promise.
- 2 **Police officer** Can I help you?
Girl Yes, um, I'd like to report a stolen tablet.
PO OK, I'll need some information about the tablet, then. Um, what make is it?
G It's an Asus.
PO Which model?
G The Transformer Pad.
PO The white one?

G No, it's black. And it's got a purple cover.

PO Where were you when the tablet was taken?

G I was on the underground. I think someone took it while I was getting off the train.

- 3 **Gadgets Alive!** is pleased to announce its fantastic winter sale. Prices have been slashed in all departments, with the best offers in audiovisuals. DVD players have been reduced by up to 20% and there's a discount of 40% on all of our digital cameras. Treat yourself to a new MP3 player at 30% of the normal price. Sale starts on Saturday 19th at 9 a.m. and continues while stocks last. Don't miss this great opportunity – you won't regret it!
- 4 **Mum** Happy Birthday, Matt.
M Thanks! Wow – that's a big box. What is it?
M Open it and see.
M OK ... um, is it a TV for my room?
M It might be ...
M If it isn't a TV, it could be a new computer.
M Why don't you open it?
M OK, here goes ... Wow! It's just what I wanted. Let's set it up and try it out. Where are the controllers?
M I think they're in the box.
M Yes, here they are. Right, what do you want to play?
- 5 And now for the news. A teenage girl in Maine has been injured by her smartphone. The 13-year-old had taken the phone out of her bag and put it into the back pocket of her trousers. When she sat down at her desk, she heard a noise and she started feeling hot. Smoke was coming out of her trousers and her phone was on fire. The girl was rushed to hospital, but was later discharged with minor burns. It is thought that the fire was caused by the battery of the phone, which exploded.

Exercise 3 page 116
1 B 2 A, D 3 C 4 A 5 B, D 6 D

Exercise 4 page 117
1 b 2 c 3 a 4 c 5 b 6 c 7 b 8 a
9 a 10 b

Oxford University Press
is the world's authority
on the English language.

As part of the University of
Oxford, we are committed to
furthering English language
learning worldwide.

We continuously bring
together our experience,
expertise and research to
create resources such as
this one, helping millions of
learners of English to achieve
their potential.

مرجع زبان ایرانیان



OXFORD
UNIVERSITY PRESS
irlanguage
www.oup.com/elt



Third Edition **Solutions**

Leading the way to success

With 100% new content, the third edition of Oxford's
best-selling Secondary course offers the tried and trusted
Solutions methodology alongside fresh material that will
spark your students' interest and drive them to succeed.

MOTIVATE • ACTIVATE • ACHIEVE

+ Create inspiring and motivating lessons with the
Solutions Third Edition Teacher's Pack.

- **Teacher's Book**
- **Teacher's Resource Disk**
 - Photocopiable Communicative Activities
 - DVD Worksheets with extension activities and teaching notes
 - Teacher's Guide with full teaching notes
 - Twenty-first Century Skills Projects
 - Course Test Audio
- **Workbook Audio CD**

Teacher's Website:

www.oup.com/elt/teacher/solutions